

PE 135

.V4

Copy 1

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

---

Chap. PE 135

No. 109. V4

---

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.









# A GUIDE

TO THE

## ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE:

### A GRAMMAR

After Erasmus Rask,

EXTRACTS IN PROSE AND VERSE,

WITH NOTES ETC. FOR THE USE OF LEARNERS,

AND

An Appendix.

BY

EDWARD JOHNSTON VERNON B.A.

MAGDALENE HALL.

---

*Antiquam exquirite Matrem.*

---



LONDON:

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,  
4, OLD COMPTON STREET, SOHO SQUARE.

MDCCCL.

PE 135

.V4



TO

JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ. D.C.J.

Principal of Magdalene Hall,

ETC. ETC.

IN TOKEN OF

RESPECT AND ESTEEM



## P R E F A C E.

---

ANGLO-SAXON was spoken by our forefathers in England for more than five hundred years; from it have sprung the greater part of our local and family names, very many of our old, and almost all our provincial words and sayings, and fifteen twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman therefore altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue, while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with modern German.\*

The present object is to furnish the learner, if it may be, with a cheaper, easier, more comprehensive, and not less trustworthy guide to this tongue than may hitherto have been within his reach.

The first six chapters are mainly abridged from the Grammar of the late Professor Rask of Copenhagen, as edited by Mr. Thorpe, whom the compiler has to thank for leave to make use of his praiseworthy labours, and for obliging answers to queries.

\* See Thorpe's Advertisement to Rask's Grammar

Some alterations and additions seemed called for by the progress of the study since the publication of that work, whence its improved cultivation in this country must be dated. Illustrations from the kindred new Teutonic dialects German and Dutch, with some from Greek and Latin, old and provincial English &c. have taken the place of the Scandinavian\* references as fitter for the English learner. A view, however narrow and imperfect, of languages more or less nearly akin, can hardly fail, it is hoped, to awaken in the understanding student, a wish to know something more of comparative philology, hitherto so unworthily slighted among ourselves, and so laboriously and skilfully worked out by the Germans.

The hyphen is used throughout to divide the parts of compound words from each other, as also prefixes, and when needful, case-endings and other terminations, from roots; in this as in other tongues, the beginner must accustom himself to parse not only every word in a phrase, but every syllable in a word.

Some rules for gender have been attempted, and a list of exceptions to the general rule of its agreement with the German, together with comparative tables of the cardinal numbers, and of the chief tenses, are added.

The accent, sometimes misplaced or left out by Rask, and too often altogether neglected by others, has been carefully attended to.

\* Some acquaintance with Icelandic and the other old northern tongues, above all Gothic, which shows the originals of the A. S. inflections, quantity &c., is of course needful for a *perfect* knowledge of Anglo-Saxon.

The Syntax is in great part new; the examples mostly gathered from the compiler's own reading.

The Extracts in prose and verse are fitted by explanatory notes for use without a dictionary; an analysis of the narrative verse, partly shortened from Rask, and a literal version of the poetry, are also given. The purpose here being to teach pure Anglo-Saxon only, the selections are all from writers of a good age; one well grounded in the language in its perfect state, will not find it hard to bring down his knowledge of his native tongue, through Semi-Saxon, and old and middle English, to our own time.

The Appendix contains lists of words likely to be confounded by learners, together with a number of additional notes. For the length to which the latter have run some apology may be needed, but it seemed best not to lose the opportunity of bringing in, however irregularly, some matter which may be useful.

To Mr. J. M. Kemble, Editor of *Beowulf &c.*, who shares with Mr. Thorpe the honour of making his countrymen independent of foreigners for a right knowledge of their old national language and literature, sincere thanks are due for much very kind, and most valuable help and advice touching the accent, gender, and other hard and weighty points, on which opinions from such an authority cannot be too highly prized. Obliging hints, and the loan of scarce books from other quarters, must also be thankfully acknowledged.

The compiler, feeling what scanty justice has been done to these various and welcome aids, must add that

for those faults both of doing, and of leaving undone, which he cannot hope to have avoided, he alone has to answer. Should this imperfect attempt however, by making the speech of the Anglo-Saxons somewhat easier and more attractive than heretofore to their children, give any of these a better knowledge of the real structure, and true spirit, and a greater love for the power and worth of that tongue, which bids fair one day to overspread the whole earth, some time and labour will not have been spent in vain.

---

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE.
Preface . . . . .	v
<b>CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.</b>	
1. Alphabet &c. . . . .	1
2. Accent . . . . .	2
3. Pronunciation . . . . .	3
4. Spelling . . . . .	4
5. Change of Letters . . . . .	5
6. Correspondence of do. . . . .	7
<b>CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.</b>	
1. Genders . . . . .	8
2. Inflection . . . . .	10
3. Simple Order, or Declension I. . . . .	12
4. Complex Order. Declension II. Class 1. . . . .	14
5. — — — — — 2. . . . .	14
6. — — — — — 3. . . . .	16
7. Complex Order. Declension III. Class 1. . . . .	17
8. — — — — — 2. . . . .	18
9. — — — — — 3. . . . .	19
<b>CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES.</b>	
1. Inflection . . . . .	20
2. Definite Declension . . . . .	21
3. Indefinite Declension I. . . . .	22
4. — — — — — II. . . . .	23
5. Comparison . . . . .	24
6. Irregular do. . . . .	25

## CHAPTER IV.—PRONOUNS.

	PAGE.
1. Personal . . . . .	27
2. Possessive . . . . .	29
3. Demonstrative . . . . .	30
4. Interrogative . . . . .	31
5. Indefinite . . . . .	32
6. Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	33
7. Ordinal do. . . . .	35

## CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

1. Conjugation . . . . .	37
2. Chief Tenses . . . . .	38
3. Simple Order, or Conjugation I. . . . .	39
4. Conjugation I. Class 1. . . . .	41
5. — — — 2. . . . .	42
6. — — — 3. . . . .	45
7. Complex Order . . . . .	46
8. Conjugation II. Class 1. . . . .	48
9. — — — 2. . . . .	50
10. — — — 3. . . . .	53
11. Conjugation III. . . . .	54
12. Conjugation III. Class 1. . . . .	55
13. — — — 2. . . . .	58
14. — — — 3. . . . .	59
15. Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	60
16. Auxiliaries &c. . . . .	62

## CHAPTER VI.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

1. Prefixes . . . . .	63
2. Nominal Terminations . . . . .	65
3. Adjectival do. . . . .	67
4. Verbal do. . . . .	68
5. Particles . . . . .	69
6. Composition . . . . .	71



## CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX.

	PAGE.
1. Syntax . . . . .	73
2. Syntax of Nouns . . . . .	74
3. — — Adjectives . . . . .	76
4. — — Verbs . . . . .	78
5. — — Prepositions . . . . .	87
6. — — Conjunctions . . . . .	92
7. — — Interjections . . . . .	96

## CHAPTER VIII.—PROSE EXTRACTS.

1. S. Matthew, XII. 1—13. . . . .	98
2. S. Mark, VI. 32. . . . .	100
3. S. Luke, XX. 9—25. . . . .	104
4. S. John, VII. 14—28. . . . .	107
5. Genesis, XLV. . . . .	109
6. Exodus, XXIII. . . . .	113
7. Saxon Chronicle . . . . .	117
8. Apollonius . . . . .	121
9. Boëthius, XVII., XXXIV. 10. . . . .	129

## CHAPTER IX.—VERSE EXTRACTS.

1. Narrative Verse . . . . .	135
2. Boëthius, Metre XII. . . . .	141
3. Cædmon, parts of Cant. II. and XVI. . . . .	145
4. Beówulf, parts of Cant. V., XXII., XXVII. . . . .	153

## APPENDIX.

1. Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning . . . . .	162
2. Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning . . . . .	167
3. Other words likely to be confounded by learners . . . . .	174
4. Additional Notes . . . . .	180

## ABBREVIATIONS &c.

---

A. S. Anglo-Saxon.

Comp. compare.

D. Dutch.

F. French.

G. German.

Goth. Gothic.

Gr. Greek.

L. Latin.

lit. literally.

O. old English in general

P. provincial.

S. Scottish, the ancient English dialect of the Lowlands of Scotland, and part of the north of England.

Numbers, applied to a noun, denote the declension and class; to a verb, the conjugation and class; to an adjective, the indefinite declension.

# GUIDE

TO THE

## ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### SECT. I.—*The Alphabet, &c.*

The A. S. letters are 24, viz.

A	a	[Ǽ]	N	n
Æ	æ	[Ǽ]	O	o
B	b		P	p
C	c	[C]	R	r [r]
D	d	[ð]	S	s [r]
E	e	[e]	T	t [t]
F	f	[f]	U	u
G	g	[G ȝ]	W	w [ƿ ƿƿ]
H	h	[h ƿ]	X	x
I	i		Y	y
L	l		þ	þ
M	m	[M]	Ð	ð

The characters between brackets were written by the Anglo-Saxons, but being for the most part mere corruptions of the Roman forms are now seldom printed.

In later times *k* was used for *c*; *v* and *z* occur in foreign names only. The abbreviations *ȝ* for *and*, *þ* for *þæt*, *the*, *that*, and others were in use; in general *-* shows that *m* or *n* is left out.

---

## II.—Accent.

The accent (') over a vowel shows it to be long. The A. S. accented vowels are mostly long by nature; as, *lár lore* (G. *lehre*), *bǣr bier* (G. *bahre*), *grén green* (G. *grün*), *wíd wide* (G. *weit*), *g ó d good* (G. *gut*), *r ú m room, space* (G. *raum*), *f ý r fire* (G. *feuer*). Some have become long by contraction, *g*, *h*, *ng*, or *n*, being left out; as, *smeagan, smeá̄n to consider*, *sleahan, sleá̄n to slay*, *gangan, gá̄n to go*, *fangan, fón to take*: in *fíf five*, *tóđ tooth*, *múđ mouth*, and the like, the kindred tongues show the omitted *n*; as, *πεντε*, L. *quinque*, G. *fünf*; *ὀ-δους, ὀ-δοντ-ος*, L. *dens*,<sup>(1)</sup> G. *zahn*; G. *mund*: a few from the omission of a vowel; as, *tæe, tá̄ -toe*. From the examples above and below, it will be seen that in English a long or double vowel, and in German a long or double vowel, or diphthong, commonly answers to an A. S. long or accented vowel, while short vowels in general correspond in like manner. The accent serves at the same time, though never used for that purpose merely, to distinguish many words of like spelling but different meaning and sound; as, *ac but, ác oak*; *mæst must, mǣst most*; *wende turned, went, wénde weened*; *is is, ís ice*; *for for, fór journey*; *ful full*,

(1) In A. S. as in Greek, *ns* does not occur in the same syllable.

fúl *foul*; hyrde *herd, keeper*, hýrde *heard*.<sup>(2)</sup> Without due attention therefore to the accent, A. S. cannot be rightly written, pronounced, nor understood.<sup>(3)</sup>

---

### III.—*Pronunciation.*

The pronunciation is as follows:—

a has the sound of our *a* in *ah*; F. &c. short *a*.

á is longer and broader, like G. &c. long *a*, approaching our *au* and *aw*.

au and aw sound nearly like *ow* in *now*, but more open, like G. and Italian *au*.

æ is pronounced like *a* in *glad*.

æ nearly as *a* in *dare*; G. *eh*; F. close *é*.

e sounds like *e* in *send, rather*, when thus placed; before a consonant followed by a vowel it resembles the *ea* in *bear*, but is shorter, like F. open *è*. Before a or o it sounds as *y*; at the end of a syllable it is very lightly sounded, like the F. unaccented *e*, or the G. *e* final.

é is pronounced like *æ*.

i and y answer to *i* in *dim*.

i before another vowel to *y*.

í an dý to *ee* in *deem*.

o to short *o* in *not*; F. open *o*.

ó to long *o* in *note*; F. close *ó*.

ow is sounded as *ow* in *now*.

(2) Comp. G. *mast, meist; wandte, wáhnte; ist, eis; für, fuhr; voll, faul; hirt, hörte*.

(3) The more advanced student will find comparison with the Gothic and other ancient dialects the only sure guide to the A. S. quantity.

u as *u* in *full*.

ú as *oo* in *fool*.

The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:—

c is always hard like *k*; cw stands for *qu*, which was however used in later times.

f between two vowels, or at the end of a syllable, sounds like *v*.

g is never soft; when placed however between two of the vowels æ, e, i, or y, or at the beginning of a syllable before e or i, followed by another vowel, it has the sound of *y*.<sup>(1)</sup>

cg is usually written for *gg*.

h is always strongly aspirated; at the end of a syllable or before a hard consonant it is guttural, like the G. *ch*, the S. *ch* in *loch*, and the Irish *gh* in *lough*.

hw answers to our *wh*; h occurs also before *l*, *n* and *r*.

w sometimes, as in E., stands before *r*; likewise before *l*.

þ (*tha*) is our hard *th*, as in *thing*.

ð (*eth*) our soft *th*, as in *other*.

þ usually begins, ð ends a syllable, but they were and are often confounded.

---

#### IV.—*Spelling*.

The A. S. spelling was very variable; the following are the commonest changes:—

<sup>1</sup> It is likely that g before e or i, and (like h) at the end of a syllable, was guttural, as it often is in German, and always in Dutch.

á — æ and æ — á; þám, þæm; þære, þære.

a — ea; waldan, wealdan *to wield, rule*.

a — o and o — a; man, mon<sup>(2)</sup> *man*; on, an *on*.

ea — e and e — a; ceaster, cester<sup>(3)</sup> *town*; fela, feala *many*; eá — é; teáh, téh *drew*.

i — y, eo; hit, hyt *it*: him, heom *them*.

í — ý, íe, eó; hí, hý, hie, heó *they*.

eo — u, y, e; sweord, swurd *sword*; seolf, sylf, self *self*.

eó — ú, ý; sweótol, swútol, swýtol *manifest*.

g — h; sorg, sorh *care, sorrow*.

ng, nc, nge; sang, sanc, sange *song*: n and g are often transposed, &c.; þegen, þegn, þeng, þen *servant, thane*: g is sometimes added or cast off at the end of a word; as, hwý, hwýg *why?* hefig, hefi *heavy*: it is often left out before d or ð; mægden, mæden *maiden*, mægð, mæð *tribe*.

cs, sc, hs, x; ácsian, áscian, áhsian, áxian *to ask (ax)*.<sup>(4)</sup>

#### V.—Change of Letters.

Other changes of letters take place in inflection and derivation; the German synonyms often undergo the like, the English sometimes.

a is changed into æ, and *vice versá*; grafan *to grave*, (G. graben); þú græfst *thou gravest*, (G. du gräbst);

(2) P. mon for man, lang for long, and the like.

(3) L. castra; hence Chester, -cester, &c. in local names.

(4) See also nouns II. 2., and irregular comparison.

bæð *bath*, (G. bad); baðu *baths* (G. bäder.)<sup>(1)</sup>

a into e; man, *man* (G. mann); men<sup>(2)</sup> *men* (G. männer).

á into æ; hál *hale, whole*, ge-hælan *to heal*.

ea into e or y; neah *nigh*, nehst *nyhst nighest, next*.

e, o, eo, u into i or y; ren *rain*, rinan *to rain*; storm *storm* (G. sturm); styrman *to storm* (G. stürmen); weorc *work* (G. werk), wyrcan *to work* (G. wirken); hunger *hunger*, hyngrian *to hunger*.

eá, eó, ú, into ý; leás *loose*, (G. los); a-lýsan *to re-lease* (G. er-lösen); neód *need* (G. noth); nýðan *to force* (G. nöthigen); scrúd *shroud*, scrýðan *to shroud*.

ó into é; dóm *doom*, déman *to deem, doom*.

bb into f; a-hebban *to exalt*, a-hafen *exalted*<sup>(4)</sup>.

c and cc into h; sécan *to seek*, ic sóhte *I sought*; feccan *to fetch*, (ge-)freht *fretcht*<sup>(5)</sup>.

g into h and *vice versa*; wrígan *to cover*, ic wráh *I covered*; beorh *mountain*, plur. beorgas<sup>(6)</sup>.

s into r<sup>(7)</sup>; freósan *to freeze*, (ge-)frozen *frozen*.

ð into d<sup>(8)</sup>; sníðan *to cut* (G. schneiden), sniden *cut* (G. ge-schnitten).

Several other changes take place in the formation of imperfects I. 3. and complex; likewise in nouns II. 2., III. 1. 3. and in adjectives.

(1) See Verbs II. 3., and Nouns III. 1.

(2) See Nouns III. 2.

(3) See irregular comparison.

(4) See Verbs II. 3.

(5) See Verbs I. 2, 3.

(6) See Verbs III. 1, 2. Nouns II. 2.

(7) See Verbs III. 3.

(8) See Verbs II. 1, and III. 2.



VI.—*Correspondence of Letters.*

Attention to the correspondence of A. S. with English and German letters helps not only to recognise words already known in a kindred tongue, but to settle their derivation, spelling, and quantity. Thus—

á answers to E. long o; G. ei, l. e; bān<sup>(9)</sup> *bone*, G. bein; máre<sup>(10)</sup> *more, greater*, G. mehr.

eá to E. l. e; G. l. o, a, au: streám *stream*, G. strom; sceáp *sheep*, G. schaf; ge-leáfa *be-lief*, G. g-laube.

ea to E. short a, l. o; G. s. a: scearp *sharp*, G. scharf; ceald *cold*, G. kalt.

æ to E. and G. a, e: gæst *guest*, G. gast; fæst *fast*, G. fest.

æ to E. l. e, a, o; G. l. a, ei: sæd *seed*, G. saat; hær *hair*, G. haar; máest<sup>(11)</sup> *most*, G. meist.

é to E. l. e; G. l. ü, ä: céne *bold, keen*, G. kühn; wénan *to ween, imagine*, G. wännen.

í to E. l. i; G. ei: síde *side*, G. seite.

eo to E. a, o, u, e; G. e, ie: deorc *dark*, sweord *sword*, G. schwert; ceorl *churl*, G. kerl; feoll *fell*, G. fiel.

ó to E. oo; G. l. u: flór *floor*, G. flur.

eó, eów to E. l. e; G. l. ie, eu: deóp *deep*, G. tief; deor *dear*, G. theuer; cneów *knee*, G. knie.

ú to E. ou, ow, oo; G. l. au, u: mús *mouse*, G. maus; cú *cow*, G. kuh; rúm *room, space*, G. raum.

(<sup>9</sup>) S. *bane*.

(<sup>10</sup>) S. *mair*.

(<sup>11</sup>) S. *maist*.

ý to E. l. i, e; G. l. eu, au, ö: fýr *fire*, G. *feuer*; brýd *bride*, G. *braut*; hýran *to hear*, G. *hören*.

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. ch, k: cyle *chill*, G. *kühle*; stician *to stick*, G. *stechen*.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G. *strecken*; liccian *to lick*, G. *lecken*.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. *schild*; disc *dish, table*, G. *tisch*; tusc *tusk*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear *year*, G. *jahr*; girstan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. *frost*: bridd (*young*) *bird*; flacse *flask*, G. *flasche*.

## CHAPTER II.

### I.—Nouns. Gender.

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter:        { wíf        G. weib *woman, wife*.  
                  { cild        G. kind *child*.

Masculine: mona   G. mond *moon*.

Feminine: sunne   G. sonne *sun*.

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár        G. ähre       (f.) *ear of corn*.

— fæsten       G. feste       (f.) *fastness*.

— fyðer        G. feder       (f.) *feather, wing*.

Neut. mód	G. muth	(m.)	<i>mind, mood.</i>
— twig	G. zweig	(m.)	<i>twig.</i>
— wæpen	G. waffe	(f.)	<i>weapon.</i>
— wésten	G. wüste	(f.)	<i>waste, desert.</i>
— wín <sup>(1)</sup>	G. wein	(m.)	<i>wine.</i>
Masc. cræft	G. kraft	(f.)	<i>power, craft, art.</i>
— ende	G. ende	(n.)	<i>end.</i>
— feld	G. feld	(n.)	<i>field.</i>
— here	G. heer	(n.)	<i>army.</i>
— lust	G. lust	(f.)	<i>lust, pleasure.</i>
— mere <sup>(2)</sup>	G. meer	(n.)	<i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem. bók	G. buch	(n.)	<i>book.</i>
— hælu <sup>(3)</sup>	G. heil	(m.)	<i>health, salvation.</i>
— heorte <sup>(4)</sup>	G. herz	(n.)	<i>heart.</i>
— ge-sýhð	G. ge-sicht	(n.)	<i>sight.</i>
— turf	G. torf	(n.)	<i>turf.</i>
— wiht	G. wicht	(m.)	<i>wight, being.</i>

Moreover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and -scipe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flód<sup>(5)</sup> *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sáe *sea* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

(1) Οἶν-ος masc. L. vin-um, neut.

(2) L. mare, neut.

(3) L. sal-us, fem.

(4) Καρδ-ια fem. L. cor, neut.

(5) G. *fluth* fem.; *see* masc. and fem.; *band* neut. and masc.

## FURTHER RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Nouns ending in *-tl*, *-ed*, *-inle*, and diminutives in *-en*; likewise all having the nominative and accusative alike in both numbers are neuter.

II. Nouns in *-a*, *-m*, *-ls*, *-ađ*, *-ođ*, *-e* (from verbs) and *-ling*; likewise all forming the genitive singular in *-a*, or the nominative plural in *-as* are masculine.

III. Nouns in *-æđ*, *-uđ*, *-đ* (after a consonant) *-eo*, *-u* (of quality from adjectives) *-e* (from adjectives) *-ung*, and *-leást* are feminine.

IV. The gender of compound words depends on that of the last part; thus *wíf-man* *woman* is masculine. <sup>(1)</sup>

II.—*Declension.*

Nouns are divided into two Orders, the Simple and the Complex; <sup>(2)</sup> the former having one Declension of three Classes for the three Genders, the latter two Declensions of three Classes each <sup>(3)</sup>.

The Simple Order, answering to the Greek and Latin pure nouns, contains those ending in an essential vowel; viz. *-e* in the neuter, *-a* in the masculine, and *-e* in the feminine. The Complex Order, answering to the Gr. and L. impure nouns, comprises all ending in a consonant, together with some in an unessential *-e* or *-u*.

<sup>(1)</sup> By the same rule G. *frauen-zimmer* *female* is neut.; *manns-person* *man* fem.

<sup>(2)</sup> In Grimm's system Simple Nouns are called weak; Complex, strong.

<sup>(3)</sup> For the grounds of this division, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 26—30.

*Table of the Inflection of Nouns.*

SIMPLE ORDER.

DECLENSION I.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	-e	-a	-e
Accus. (4)	-e	-an	-an
Abl. & Dat.	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	-an	-an	-an
	PLURAL.		
Nom. & Acc.	-an		
Abl. & Dat.	-um		
Gen.	-ena		

COMPLEX ORDER.

	DECLENSION II.			DECLENSION III.		
	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	—	— (-e)	—	—(-e)	-u	-u
Accus.	—	— (-e)	-e	—(-e)	-u	-e
A. & D.	-e	-e	-e	-e	-a	-e
Gen.	-es	-es	-e	-es	-a	-e
	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N. & A.	—	-as	-a	-u	-a	-a
A. & D.	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um
Gen.	-a	-a	-a(-ena)	-a	-a	-a(-ena)

(4) On this arrangement see Rask, Preface p. 54.

## RULES FOR DECLENSION.

I. All Nouns have the nominative and accusative alike in the plural.

II. All Nouns form the ablative and dative plural in -um, often changed to -on, and sometimes again to -an.

III. The ablative and dative are always alike in each number.

IV. Neuters, as in Greek, Latin, and German, have the nominative and accusative alike in each number.

V. Feminines vary the nominative and accusative singular; but form the ablative, dative, and genitive singular alike.

VI. The Simple Order forms its genitive plural in -e na, the Complex in -a. <sup>(1)</sup>

### III.—*Simple Order, or Declension I.*

The First Declension contains a few neuters ending in -e, all masculines in -a, and all feminines in -e; the nominative plural is formed in -an<sup>(2)</sup>. The three Classes are so much alike that they may be shown at one view.

<sup>(1)</sup> Participial nouns form it in -ra (see II. 2.) like indefinite adjectives. Complex feminines (II. 3. and III. 3.) sometimes have a Simple gen. plural.

<sup>(2)</sup> G. nouns forming their plur. in -en (-n) are Simple, all others Complex.

Examples—*eáge eye, steorra star, tunge tongue.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		SINGULAR.	
	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	eág-e	steorr-a	tung-e
Accus.	eág-e	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Gen.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
		PLURAL.	
N. & Acc.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-um	steorr-um	tung-um
Gen.	eág-ena	steorr-ena	tung-ena.

In like manner are declined *eáre ear, clíwe clew; hearra lord, guma man, wyrhta wright, workman, tíma time, draca dragon, hlísa fame; hlæfdige lady, cirice (circe) church, wuce week, eorðe earth, wíse wise, way<sup>(2)</sup> &c.* Also some contracted nouns; as, *freá lord (masc.) tá toe, beó<sup>(3)</sup> bee (fem.),* making *freán &c. plural tán, táum, taena; beón, beóna &c. Æ' law, sæ sea<sup>(4)</sup>,* and *eá river (likewise fem.)* are indeclinable, except sometimes gen. *eás<sup>(5)</sup>, nom. plural eán.*

(<sup>2</sup>) *Manna man* and *heofone heaven* are much less common than *man III. 2.* and *heofon II. 2.*

(<sup>3</sup>) *G. zehe, biene,* not contracted.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Sé* is also declinable, as *II. 2.*

(<sup>5</sup>) All *A. S. nouns* originally formed the genitive in *-s*; see *p. 70, n. 4.*

IV.—*Complex Order. Declension II.*

## CLASS I.

The Second Declension, first Class, contains many neuters ending in one or more consonants.

Examples—leáf *leaf*, word *word*.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-e	word-e
Gen.	leáf-es	word-es

## PLURAL.

Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-um	word-um
Gen.	leáf-a	word-a.

Thus are declined eár *ear of corn*, hús *house*, deór <sup>(1)</sup> *beast*, ge-hát *promise*, hors *horse*, spel *story*, *spell*, wíf *woman*, wífe, bearn *child*, bairn, lamb *lamb* &c.; feoh <sup>(2)</sup> *fee*, *money*, *cattle* makes feo, feos.

## V.—CLASS II.

The Second Declension, second Class, comprises all regular masculines ending in a consonant, all complex ones in -e, and a few in -u (-o); the plural is formed in -as; some monosyllables change æ to a in the plural.

(1) Hence *deer*—"Rats and mice, and such small *deer*."

(2) Comp. L. pec-us, pec-unia; our *fee* is *money* only, G. vieh *cattle* only.



Examples—*dǣl part, deal, ende end, dæg day.*

## SINGULAR.

N. & A.	dǣl	end-e	dæg
A. & D.	dǣl-e	end-e	dæg
Gen.	dǣl-es	end-es	dæg-es

## PLURAL.

N. & A.	dǣl-as	end-as	dag-as
A. & D.	dǣl-um	end-um	dag-um
Gen.	dǣl-a	end-a	dag-a.

Thus also *cyning (cing) king, smið smith, stán stone, weg way, freo-dóm freedom, munuc-hád monkhood; mete meat, rǣdere reader, weorðscipe worship; stæf<sup>(2)</sup> staff, letter, mæg kinsman, &c.* Participial nouns in -end usually have the nominative and accusative sing. and plur. alike, and make -ra in the gen. plural. *Freónd friend, and feónd foe, fiend* have plur. *frýnd, fýnd, freónd, feónd, or freóndas &c.* Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en (-on), and -er (-or) are contracted in the oblique cases and plural; thus *engel angel, dryhten lord, ealdor prince*, make *engle, engles, englas &c. dryhtne &c.* *Heofen (-on) heaven* has abl. and dat. *heofene, heofone, or heofne* and so on. *Monað (mond) month* forms *monðe &c.* *Winter winter* has abl. and dat. *wintra, nom. pl. wintras, or winter.* *Feld field, ford ford*, and *sumer (-or) summer* make abl. and dat. *felda, forda, sumera.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. stab, stäbe; &c. G. buch-stab is letter.

Fæder *father* is seldom varied in the singular, and never contracted. Nouns in -h, and -u (-o), change them to g and w; as, beáh *ring*, beáge, beáges &c.; bealu *bale, injury*, bealwe, and the like: a few drop the -h; as, feorh *life*, feore &c. Those in -sc often take x (cs) in the plural; as, fisc *fish*, fixas &c.; sometimes throughout; fix, fixe &c.

---

### VI.—CLASS III.

The Second Declension, third Class, contains all regular feminines ending in a consonant; the plural is formed in -a.

Examples—stefen (stefn) *voice*, spráec *speech*.

#### SINGULAR.

Nom.	stefen	spráec
Acc.	stefn-e	spráec-e
A. & D.	stefn-e	spráec-e
Gen.	stefn-e	spráec-e

#### PLURAL.

N. & A.	stefn-a	spráec-a
A. & D.	stefn-um	spráec-um
Gen.	stefn-a(-ena)	spráec-a(-ena).

Thus are declined sáwel *soul*, wylen *female slave*, frófer *comfort*, ge-samnung *assembly*, écnys *eternity*, lág *law*, stów *place*, þeód *people*, lár *lore*, myrð *mirth*, bén *prayer*, &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en, -er (-or), are contracted in the oblique cases, and often in all; as, sáwl, wyln, frófr. A single final consonant after a

short vowel is doubled; as syn *sin*, accus. &c. *synne*. The gen. plur. is sometimes in *-ena*. Nouns in *-ung* sometimes form the abl. and dat. in *-a*. Hand *hand*, makes accus. *hand*, abl. and dat. *handa*. Miht *might*, tíd *time*, *tide*, woruld *world*, have the accus. like the nom.; woruld sometimes makes gen. *worldes*.<sup>(1)</sup> Niht *night*, and wiht *wight* remain unchanged in the accus. singular, and nom. plural.

### VII.—Declension III.

#### CLASS I.

The Third Declension, first Class, contains all complex neuters in *-e*, all in *-u*, all neuter dissyllables in *er (-or)*, *-el (-ol)*, and *-en*, some in *ed (-od)*, and many monosyllables in a consonant. The plural is in *-u (-o)*, often changed to *-a*; some monosyllables change *æ*, and a few *ea*, into *a* in the plural.

Examples—*treów tree*, *ricé realm*, *fæt vat*, *vessel*.

#### SINGULAR.

N. & A.	<i>treów</i>	<i>ric-e</i>	<i>fæt</i>
A. & D.	<i>treów-e</i>	<i>ric-e</i>	<i>fæt-e</i>
Gen.	<i>treów-es</i>	<i>ric-es</i>	<i>fæt-es</i>

#### PLURAL.

N. & A.	<i>treów-u</i>	<i>ric-u</i>	<i>fat-u</i>
A. & D.	<i>treów-um</i>	<i>ric-um</i>	<i>fat-um</i>
Gen.	<i>treów-a</i>	<i>ric-a</i>	<i>fat-a</i>

<sup>(1)</sup> See page 13, n. 5 above.

So likewise *scip ship*, *lim limb*, *deófol*<sup>(1)</sup> *devil*, *wæter water*, *ge-writ writing*, *writ*; *wíte punishment*, *ge-mære boundary*, *sperre spear*, *melu meal*, *flour*; *bæð bath*, *glæs*<sup>(2)</sup> *glass*, *geat gate*, &c.

Dissyllables are mostly contracted; thus, *heáfod head*, *tácen token*, *wunder wonder*, *make heáfde*, *heáfdes* &c. *tácne*, *wundre* &c.; *nýten beast*, *neat*, *weofod altar*, &c. are usually not. Those in *-en* sometimes double the *n* in the oblique cases; as, *wésten desert*, *wéstenne* &c. *Cild child*, *cealf calf*, and *æg egg*, form their plural *cildru (-a)*<sup>(3)</sup>, *cealfru*, *æggru*; the first however often has *cild* or *cilde*. *Þýstru darkness*, *lendenu loins*, &c. have no singular. Nouns in *-u* take *w*, and are usually contracted, forming the plural in *-a*; as, *searu array*, *ambush*, *searwe*, *searwes*; plur. *searwa* &c.

---

### VIII.—CLASS II.

The Third Declension, second Class, comprises masculines in *-u (-o)*, forming their plural in *-a*, some irregulars (masc. and fem.) in *-er (-or)*, changing their vowel in the ablative and dative, and making *-u (-o, -a)* in the plural, a few (masc.) changing their vowel as above, and in the nominative and accusative plural, &c.

(1) *De ó fol* is often masculine.

(2) Comp. G. *fass*, *fässer*; *glas*, *gläser*.

(3) Hence *childr-en*, P. *child-er*; comp. G. *kind*, *kind-er*; *kalb*, *kälb-er*; *ei*, *ei-er*: D. *kind*, *kind-er-en*; *kalf*, *kalv-er-en*; *ei*, *eij-er-en*.

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

SINGULAR.

N. & A.	sun-u	bróðer	man
A. & D.	sun-a	bréðer	men
Gen.	sun-a	bróðer	mann-e

PLURAL.

N. & A.	sun-a	bróðr-u	men
A. & D.	sun-um	bróðr-um	mann-um
Gen.	sun-a	bróðr-u	mann-a.

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo mead, metheglin; móðer mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister: fót foot, and tóð tooth, follow man<sup>2</sup> making fét, téð. (5) Sun-ena is rare.*

*Leóde (G. leute) people, Dene Danes, Engle Angles, Englishmen, and a few more in -e with no singular, make leóðum, leóða, &c.*

IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in -u or -o, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in -ena.

Examples—*denu vale, bók book, burh burgh, town.*

SINGULAR.

Nom.	den-u	}	bók	burh
Acc.	den-e		béc	byrig
A. & D.	den-e		béc	burg-e
Gen.	den-e		béc	burg-e

(5) Comp. G. mann, männer; fuss, füsse; zahu, zähne.

	PLURAL.	
N. & A. den-a	béc	byrig
A. & D. den-um	bóc-um	burg-um
Gen. den-a (-ena)	bóc-a	burg-a.

Like denu are declined *lufu love*, *gifu gift*, *grace*, *snóru daughter-in-law*, *caru care*, *lagu water*, &c. *Mænigeo (-u) many*, *multitude*, *yldo age*, *eld*, *brædo breadth*, and some others in-o are indeclinable, except abl. and dat. plur. *mænigum*. *Duru door* makes abl. and dat. sing. *dura*. Collectives in -waru, as *burh-waru town's-folk*, form plur. -ware, gen. -wara or -warena. *Mús mouse*, *lús louse*, *cú cow*, *gós goose*, *bróc breeches*, follow *bóc*, making plur. *mýs mice*, *lýs lice*, *cý kye*, *gés*<sup>(1)</sup> *geese*, *bréc*. *Cú* sometimes has gen. sing. *cús*,<sup>(2)</sup> gen. plur. *cúna*. *Turf turf*, and *furh furrow*, follow *burh*, making *tyrf*, &c.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### I.—Adjectives

As in German &c. have a Definite and an Indefinite inflection: the former is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, by any other demonstrative, or by a possessive pronoun; the latter always else. There are three Declensions, one for the Definite form, agreeing closely with the Simple Order, two for the In-

(1) Comp. G. buch, bücher; maus, mäuse; laus, läuse; kuh, kühe; gans, gänse.

(2) See page 70, n. 4.

definite, answering, though not so exactly, to the Complex Order of Nouns.

## II.—*Definite Declension.*

Example—(*gód good*) þæt gód-e<sup>(3)</sup> &c. *the good.*

	SINGULAR.		
	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom.	þæt gód-e	se gód-a	seó gód-e
Acc.	þæt gód-e	þone gód-an	þá gód-an
	Abl. þý gód-an		þý gód-an
	Dat. þám gód-an		þære gód-an
	Gen. þæs gód-an		þære gód-an
	PLURAL.		
	N. & A. þa gód-an		
	A. & D. þám gód-um		
	Gen. þára gód-ena.		

This declension is used for all adjectives, participles, and pronouns in general; participles present however take -ra instead of -ena in the genitive plural. Monosyllables commonly change æ to a throughout; as, smæl *small*, þæt smale, se smala, seó smale *the small*, and so on. Adjectives in -h, as heáh *high*, usually change it to g when the case-ending is a vowel, as, þæt heág-e, &c.; otherwise the h is dropt; as, abl. &c. heán. Those in -u (-o), as near-u *narrow*, take w throughout; as, þæt near-we, &c.<sup>(4)</sup>

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. Nouns I. 1, 2, 3.

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. Nouns II. 2, 3. III. 1.

III.—*Indefinite Declension I.*Example—*gód*<sup>(1)</sup> *good*.

SINGULAR.			
	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom.	<i>gód</i>	<i>gód</i>	<i>gód</i>
Acc.	<i>gód</i>	<i>gód-ne</i>	<i>gód-e</i>
	<i>Abl. gód-e</i>		<i>gód-e</i>
	<i>Dat. gód-um</i>		<i>gód-re</i>
	<i>Gen. gód-es</i>		<i>gód-re</i>
PLURAL.			
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>gód(-u)</i>	<i>gód-e</i>	
A. & D.		<i>gód-um</i>	
Gen.		<i>gód-ra.</i>	

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-ol), -isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, *wyrð-e* *worth*, *worthy*, *dýg-el* *dark*, *sprec-ol* *talkative*, *menn-isc* *human*, *ge-wís* *sure*, *sóð* *true*, *sooth*, *leóht* *light*, *heard* *hard*, *seóc* *sick*, *wrec* *wretched*, *fæst* *fast*, &c.

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection is added; *wyrð-ne*, *wyrð-um*, *wyrð-re*, &c.

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. *heá-nne*, *nearo-ne*; abl. &c. fem. *heá-re*, *near-we* or *near-e*; gen. plur. *heá-ra*, *near-wa* or *near-a*.

(1) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.



IV.—*Indefinite Declension II.*Example—smæġ (<sup>2</sup>) *small*

				SINGULAR.		
		Neut.	Masc.		Fem.	
Nom.	smæġ		smæġ		smal-u	
Acc.	smæġ		smæġ-ne		smal-e	
-----						
	Abl.	smal-e			smale	
	Dat.	smal-um			smæl-re	
	Gen.	smal-es			smæl-re	

			PLURAL.	
		Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	
N. & A.	smal-u		smal-e	
-----				
A. & D.		smal-um		
Gen.		smæl-ra.		

Thus are declined monosyllables with æ (except fæst) &c., most adjectives with derived endings, and participles past of the Complex Order; some of both the latter, however, follow Declension I. As, læt *late, slow*, swær *heavy*, glæd *glad*, bæŕ *bare*, swæ's *sweet, dear*, til *good*, eád-ig *blessed, prosperous*, fær-lic *sudden, dangerous*, ge-sib-sum *peaceable*, mæg-er *meagre*, hlutt-or *clear*, fæg-en *glad, fain*. Some dissyllables are contracted in certain forms, as, hál-ig *holy*, hál-ge, hál-ges, &c., but gen. plur. hál-igra and the like.

(1) Comp. Nouns III. 1, 3.

V.—*Comparison.*

The Comparative and Superlative Degrees are regularly formed by adding -or and -ost<sup>(1)</sup>, (E. and G. -er and -est), to the indefinite form; as, leóf, leóf-or, leóf-ost *dear, dear-er, dear-est* (G. lieb, lieb-er, lieb-est): æ usually becomes a; as, smæl, smal-or, smal-ost, *small, small-er, small-est.* (G. schmal, schmal-er, schmal-est.) The ending -or is however only adverbial; as an adjective the Comparative is formed in -re, -ra, -re, whether used definitely or indefinitely; as, (þæt) leóf-re, (se) leóf-ra, (seó) leóf-re (*the dearer*); (G. das &c. lieb-re) (þæt) smæl-re &c. (*the smaller*); (G. das &c. schmal-re). The Superlative has both the definite and indefinite inflections, the former in -ost, or -est, (also the adverbial form), the latter in -oste, -osta, -oste, or -este &c.; as, leóf-ost *dearest*, þæt leóf-oste, or leóf-este &c. *the dearest*; (G. das &c. lieb-ste.)

## TABLE OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	Adjective.	
heard	{ (þæt) heard-re { (the) hard-er	heard-ost
hard		hard-est
þæt heard-e		þæt heard-oste
the hard		the hard-est
	Adverb.	
heard-e	heard-or	heard-ost
hard-ly	hard-li-er	hard-li-est.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. the L. comparative -ior; Gr. superlative *ιστ-ος*, &c.

VI.—*Irregular Comparison.*

The following adjectives are irregularly compared; the change of a into e; æ into a; eá into ý, or é; ea, eo, u, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me<sup>(2)</sup> (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compared. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
lang <sup>(3)</sup>	lengre (leng)	lengest
<i>long</i>	<i>longer</i>	<i>longest</i>
strang	strengre (strangor)	strengest
<i>strong</i>	<i>stronger</i>	<i>strongest</i>
hræd (hraðe)	hræðre (hraðor)	hraðost
<i>quick, rath</i>	<i>quicker (rather)</i>	<i>quickest</i>
eald	yldre	yldest
<i>old</i>	<i>elder</i>	<i>eldest</i>
neah	nearre (near, nyr)	nyhst, nehst, next
<i>nigh</i>	<i>nigher</i>	<i>nighest, next</i>
heáh	hýrre	hýhst, héhst
<i>high</i>	<i>higher</i>	<i>highest</i>
eáð	eáðre (éðre, éð)	eáðost
<i>easy</i>	<i>easier</i>	<i>easiest</i>
feor	fyrre (fyr)	fyrrest
<i>far</i>	<i>further</i>	<i>furthest</i>
geong	gyngre	gyngest
<i>young</i>	<i>younger</i>	<i>youngest</i>

(2) Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

(3) Comp. G. lang, länger, längst; alt, älter, ältest; nahe, näher, nächst; hoch, höher, höchst; jung, jünger, jüngst; fort, fürter; sanft, sänfter, sänftest; eher, erst; gut, wohl, besser, best; mehr, meist, &c.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sceort	scyrtre	scyrtest
<i>short</i>	<i>shorter</i>	<i>shortest</i>
(ford, furð)	furðre (furðor)	
( <i>forth</i> )	<i>further</i>	
sóft	séftre (séft)	séftest
<i>soft</i>	<i>softer</i>	<i>softest</i>
ær (¹)	ærre (ærer, -or)	ærest (-ost)
<i>early (ere)</i>	<i>earlier, sooner</i>	( <i>erst</i> ) <i>first</i>
gód (wel)	betere (bet)	betest, betst
<i>good (well)</i>	<i>better</i>	<i>best</i>
yfel	wyrse (wyr)	wyrrest, wyrst
<i>evil</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>worst</i>
micel	máre (má) (²)	máest
<i>great, mickle</i>	<i>greater, more</i>	<i>greatest, most</i>
lytel (lyt)	læsse (læs)	læst
<i>little</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>least</i>
forme (fore)		fyrrest, fyrst
<i>former, fore</i>		<i>foremost, first</i>
læt, læteme (late)	lætre (lator)	latost, lætemest
<i>late, slow</i>	<i>later, latter</i>	<i>latest, last</i>
síð, síðeme	síðre (síðor)	síðost, síðemest
<i>late, (since)</i>		
nordeme, (nord) (³)	(nordor)	nordemest
<i>northern, north</i>		<i>northmost</i>
úfeme (úp)	úfere (úfor)	ýfemest
<i>high (up)</i>	<i>upper</i>	<i>upmost</i>
æfteme (æfter)	æftre	æftemest
<i>aft, after</i>	<i>after</i>	<i>aftmost</i>

(¹) Hence O. *or*; “or ever.

(²) For *már*, to which we have returned *more*; O. was *mo*

(³) Some of these are often formed in *-weard*; as, n *rðe-weard* *northern, north-ward*, úfe-*weard* (*úp-weard*) *upper, up-ward*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
hindeme	hindere	hindemest
<i>hind</i>	<i>hinder</i>	<i>hindmost</i>
inneme (inn)	innere (innor)	innemest
<i>inner (in)</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>inmost</i>
úteme (út)	útre (útor)	ýtemest
<i>outer (out)</i>	<i>outer, utter</i>	<i>outmost, utmost</i>
midd, midme		midmest
<i>mid</i>		<i>midmost</i>
niðeme (niðer)	niðre (niðror)	niðemest
<i>low (down)</i>	<i>nether</i>	<i>nethmost.</i>

## CHAPTER IV.

## I.—Pronouns—Personal.

THE personal Pronouns are *ic I*, *þú thou*, *hit, he*, *heó it, he, she*. The two first are the only A. S. words with a dual number.

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>ic</i> <sup>(4)</sup>	<i>þú</i> <sup>(5)</sup>
A.	<i>me</i>	<i>þe</i>
A.&D.	<i>me</i>	<i>þe</i>
G.	<i>mín</i>	<i>þín</i>

	SINGULAR.		DUAL.		PLURAL.	
	DUAL.	PLURAL.	DUAL.	PLURAL.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>wit</i> <sup>(6)</sup>	<i>we</i>	<i>git</i>	<i>ge</i>	<i>inc</i>	<i>eów</i>
A.	<i>unc</i>	<i>ús</i>	<i>inc</i>	<i>eów</i>	<i>inc</i>	<i>eów</i>
A.&D.	<i>unc</i>	<i>ús</i>	<i>inc</i>	<i>eów</i>	<i>inc</i>	<i>eów</i>
G.	<i>uncer</i>	<i>úre</i>	<i>incer</i>	<i>eówer</i>	<i>incer</i>	<i>eówer</i>

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. ἔγ-ω, με, &c. L. eg-o, me; G. ich, mir, wir, (D. wij) uns, unser.

<sup>(5)</sup> Comp. (Dor.) τυ, τε; L. tu, te; G. du, dir, euch, &c. D. gij, &c.

<sup>(6)</sup> Remark a peculiar construction with the dual:—*wit Scilling we two, viz. I and Scilling; healf þæs cinges, healf uncer Brentinges, half the king's, half mine and Brenting's.*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. hit (1)	he	heó
A. hit	hine	hí
—————		
A. & D.	him	hire
G.	his	hire
—————		
PLURAL.		
N. & A.		hí
A. & D.		him
G.		hira

Meh, mec (L. mihi, G. mich) and þeh, þec (G. dich) sometimes occur for me and þe: likewise the poetical úsih, úsic, and eówih, eówic for ús and eów; and uncit and incit, for unc and inc.

There being, as in English, no reflective pronoun, the personals are used instead; as, ic me reste *I rest me* (*myself*); þa þeówas wyrmdon híg, *the servants were warming them* (*-selves*). Sylf *self, same*, declined as an adjective both definitely and indefinitely (I.), and agreeing with the pronoun or noun, gives a strong reflective sense; as, ic sylf or sylfa *I myself*; fram me sylfum *of myself*; þú sylf *thou thyself*; we sylfe *we ourselves*, &c.; seó sylfe tíð *the same time*.<sup>(2)</sup> Sometimes the pronoun stands in the dative before sylf; as, (ic) me sylf *I myself*; him-sylf *he himself*.<sup>(3)</sup>

(1) Comp. ó, ñ, óν, oi, ai; L. id, is, ea, eum, ejus, ii; G. es, ihn, ihm, ihr; D. het, hij, &c.

(2) Comp. G. ich selber, wir selben, die selbe zeit, &c.

(3) Like F. *moi-même, lui-même*, hence seemingly *my-self, thy-self*, &c.: *self* is properly no more a noun than *αὐτός*, L. *ipse*, or F. *même*.

II.—*Possessives.*

The Possessive Pronouns are formed, as in German, from the genitives of the two first persons; as, *mín* (G. *mein*) *mine, my*; *þín* (G. *dein*) *thine, thy*; *uncer, úre* (G. *unser*) *our*; *incer, eówer* (G. *euer*) *your*: like other Pronouns in general, they are declined as indefinite adjectives I. Those in *-er* are usually contracted; as *uncre, eówres*, and the like. *U're* forms *úrum, úres*, &c; but remains unchanged in the whole feminine singular. The poetical *úser* (*usser*) for *úre* is thus declined:—

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
SINGULAR.		
N. <i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>
A. <i>úser</i>	<i>úserne</i>	<i>usse</i>
A. & D. <i>ussum</i>		<i>usse</i>
G.	<i>usses</i>	<i>usse</i>
PLURAL.		
N. & A. <i>usse, úser</i>		
A. & D. <i>ussum</i>		
G. <i>ussa.</i>		

The genitive of the third person is used unchanged; *his, its, his, hire her, hira their*. To make these reflective, the genitive of *sylf* agreeing with the pronoun, or the indefinite adjective *ágen own*, agreeing with the noun, must be used; as, *þín sylfes bearn thine own son*; *tó his ágenre þearfe to his own need*. *Sín* occurs in poetry as a possessive of the third person; not however like G. *sein*, for L. *ejus*, but for L. *suus* only.

III.—*Demonstratives.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are *þæt*, *se*, *seó* *that*, likewise the relative *which*, *who*, *that*, and the article *the*; (1) and *þis*, *þes*, *þeós* *this*.

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.		Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N.	þæt <sup>(2)</sup>	se	seó		þis <sup>(3)</sup>	þes	þeós
A.	þæt	þone	þá		þis	þisne	þás
Abl.	þý		þý		þise		þisse
D.	þám		þære		þisum		þisse
G.	þæs		þære		þises		þisse
	N. & A.	þa				þás	
	A. & D.	þám				þisum	
	G.	þára				þissa	

*þæne*, *þám*, *þære*, *þæra*, are sometimes used for *þone*, *þám*, *þære*, *þára*; likewise *þæs* for *þás*; the *s* in *þise*, &c. is often doubled; *þissere* and *þissera* occur also for *þisse* and *þissa*. The indeclinable *þe* is used for all cases of *þæt*, *se*, *seó*, as a relative; combined with it it forms *þæt-te* (4) *that which*, *se-þe* *he that*, *seó-þe* *she that*. *þæt*, *se*, *seó* is sometimes repeated in a sentence, standing first as a demonstrative, and next as a relative; but *þe* commonly stands as

(1) Comp. the threefold use of G. *das*, *der*, *die*.

(2) Comp. *το, ὁ, ἡ, τον, τα, τοι, ται*; G. *das*, *den*, *dem*, *der*, *des*, &c. D. *dat*, &c. From *seó* comes *she* (G. *sie*); from *þa* *they*, *þám* *them*, *þára* *their*.

(3) Comp. G. *dies*, &c.; *þás* and *þás* have become *those* and *these*.

(4) *Þætte* is also *that* (conjunction) G. *dass*.



relative in the second place; as, *þæt micle ge-teld þe Moises worhte, the great tent that Moses made.*

*þe* is sometimes used along with *hit*, &c. as a relative; as, *þe þurh hine through whom.*

*Swá* is sometimes used (like *G.* *so*) as an indeclinable relative.

*Ylc same*, follows the indefinite declension.

*Swylc such*, is often repeated, standing in the second place adverbially; as, *Ælc þing on-gitan swylc swylce hit is to understand each thing so as it is.*

#### IV.—Interrogatives.

The Interrogative Pronouns are *hwæt, hwá? what? who? hwylc? which? hwæðer whether? which?* The first has no plural, and is thus declined:

Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.
Nom. <i>hwæt</i>	<i>hwá</i>
Acc. <i>hwæt</i>	<i>hwone (hwæne)</i>
Abl. <i>hwý</i>	
Dat. <i>hwám (hwæm)</i>	
Gen. <i>hwæs</i> <sup>(5)</sup>	

It answers to *L. quis not qui*, and is never used as a relative: with a neuter adjective it governs the genitive; as, *hwæt yfeles? what evil?* it is also (like *G. et-was, was*) used not interrogatively, for *somewhat, a little*; as, *hwæt lytles some little.*

<sup>(5)</sup> From *hwám* and *hwæs*, are *whom* and *whose*.

V.—*Indefinites.*

The Indefinite pronouns are swá-hwæt(-swá) *what-so-ever*, swá-hwá (-swá) *who-so-ever*, swá-hwylc (-swá) *which-so-ever*, æg-hwæt (ge-hwæt), æg-hwylc, &c. *whatsoever*, &c. which follow the declension of the chief word in the compound. Others are ælc, *each*, *every one*, eall *all*, ænig *any*, nænig *none whatever*, án-lipig (ǽn-lipig) *single, alone*, &c. Ge-noh *enough* is sometimes indeclinable. A'ne *one, a*, and sum *some, a, a certain*, serve for the indefinite article, which is however often not expressed : sum placed after a genitive cardinal number implies one above it ; as, fíf-tyna sum *one of sixteen, one with fifteen others*. Manig (mænig) *many* sometimes has nom. and accus. plur. manega. Fela *much, many* is indeclinable : feáwa (feá) *few*, sometimes has abl. and dat. plur. feáwum, gen. feára ; both often govern a genitive plural ; as, mádma fela *many treasures* ; feá worda *few words*. Man (*man*) is used (like G. man, and F. on) (¹) indefinitely for *one, they* ; as, Me man sægde *they told me* (G. man sagte mir). From wiht (wuht) *creature, being*, (*wight, whit*) are formed á-wiht (á-wuht) contracted to áwht, áht *anything, ought* ; and nán-wiht (-wuht) náwht, náht (²) *nothing, nought*. Other indefinite Pronouns are óðer (-or) *other, second* (L. alius, and alter for secundus), áwðer, áðer *one of two* (L. alter duorum), náwðer (náðor), *neither of two* (L. neuter), ægðer

(¹) Formerly *hom*, from L. homo.(²) Hence *not*, like G. nicht from ne-wicht.

*either, each of two.* O'd e r forms its oblique cases fem. sing. ó đ r e ; it sometimes follows indefinite Decl. II.

VI.—*Comparative Table of Cardinal Numbers.*

GREEK.	LATIN.	DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
έν	un-um	een	án	one	ein
δυο	duo	twee	twá	two	zwei
τρια	tria	drie	þreo	three	drei
κεττορε (3)	quatuor	vier	feower	four	vier
πεντε	quinque	vijf	fíf	five	fünf
έξ	sex	zes	six	six	sechs
έπτα	septem	zeven	seofon	seven	sieben
όκτω	octo	acht	eahta	eight	acht
έννεα	novem	negen	nigon	nine	neun
δεκα	decem	tien	tyn	ten	zehn

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
elf	endlufon	eleven	eif
twaalf	twelf	twelve	zwölf
der-tien	þreo-ttyne	thir-teen	drei-zehn
veertien	feower-tyne	fourteen	vierzehn
vijftien	fíf-tyne	fifteen	funfzehn
zestien	six-tyne	sixteen	sechzehn
zeventien	seofon-tyne	seventeen	siebzehn
achtien	eahta-tyne	eighteen	achtzehn
negentien	nigon-tyne	nineteen	neunzehn
twin-tig	twen-tig	twen-ty	zwan-zig
dertig	þry-ttig	thirty	drei-ssig
veertig	feower-tig	forty	vierzig

(3) Æol. for τεσσαρα.

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
vijftig	fír-tig	fifty	funfzig
zestig	six-tig	sixty	sechzig
zeventig	hund-seofon-tig	seventy	siebzig
tachtig (¹)	hund-eahtatig	eighty	achtzig
negentig	hund-nigontig	ninety	neunzig
honderd	{ hund, hundred, } hund-teontig }	hundred	hundert
		hund-endlufontig	110
		hund-twelftig	120
duizend	þúsend	thousand	tausend.

A'n, like all other pronouns, follows indef. Decl. I., sometimes making accus. masc. ænne; thus too nán *none*. Used definitely, áne, ána, áne, and standing after its noun, &c., it means *alone*. Twá (²) and þreo are thus declined:—

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & A.	twá (tú)	twegen (³)	twá.	þreo	þrý	þreo
	A. & D. twám (twæm)			þrym		
	G. twegra (twega)			þreora.		

Bá, *begen*, bá *both*, follows twá; prefixed to twá it forms bá-twá (bú-tú) (⁴) which is indeclinable. The numbers feower to twelf inclusive, when used absolutely, have a nom. in -e, &c.; as, ealle seofone *all seven*; án of þám twelfum *one of the twelve*; án

(¹) The t- is probably a remnant of the prefix *hond-* retained before the vowel.

(²) S. *twa*. G. *zwei, zwo*.

(³) *Twain*. G. *zween*.

(⁴) Hence *both*, G. *beide*; comp. Italian *ambe-due*.

þissa fífa *one of these five*. Those above eahta usually govern a genitive. Twentig and the others in -tig make abl. and dat. -tigum, gen. -tigra. Hund prefixed to the tens after sextig (answering to -κοιτ-α, L. -gint-a) is sometimes dropt when hund *hundred* goes before; as, scipa án hund and eahtatig, *of ships one hundred and eighty*. Hund (*hundred*) follows II. 1; hundred and þúsend, III. 1.

Units are placed before tens, as, six and fíftig, *six and fifty*. In numbers above a hundred, the smaller stands last, and the noun is repeated; as, Hundteontig wintra and seofon and feowertig wintra, *a hundred winters and seven and forty winters*.<sup>(5)</sup>

Wintre affixed to numbers forms adjectives denoting age; as, fram twi-wintrum cilde, *from the child of two years*.

---

### VII.—Ordinal Numbers.

þæt forme, se forma, seó forme	<i>first</i>
þæt, se, seó óder	<i>second</i>
þæt þry-dde, se þry-dda, seó þry-dde <sup>(6)</sup>	<i>thir-d</i>
feor-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>four-th</i>
fíf-te, -ta, -te	<i>fifth</i>
six-te, — —	<i>sixth</i>
seof-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>seventh</i>
eahtoþe — —	<i>eighth</i>
nigoþe	<i>ninth</i>

<sup>(5)</sup> The northern nations reckoned time by winters.

<sup>(6)</sup> Comp. τρι-τος, L. ter-tius, G. dri-tte, vier-te, &c.

teóþe	<i>tenth</i>
endlyf-te	<i>eleventh</i>
twelfte	<i>twelfth</i>
þry-tteóðe	<i>thir-teenth</i>
feower-teóðe	<i>fourteenth</i>
fif-teóðe	<i>fifteenth</i>
six-teóðe	<i>sixteenth</i>
seofon-teóðe	<i>seventeenth</i>
eahta-teóðe	<i>eighteenth</i>
nigon-teóðe	<i>nineteenth</i>
twentig-oðe	<i>twenti-eth</i>
þryttigode	<i>thirtieth</i>
feowertigode	<i>fortieth</i>
fíftigode	<i>fiftieth</i>
sixtigode	<i>sixtieth</i>
hund-seofontigode	<i>seventieth</i>
hund-eahtatigode	<i>eightieth</i>
hund-nigontigode	<i>ninetieth</i>
hund-teontigode	<i>hundredth</i>
hund-endlufontigode	<i>110th</i>
hund-twelftigode	<i>120th</i>

Units combined with ordinal tens stand first when cardinals, last when ordinals; as, *án* and *þryttigode* *one and thirtieth*; *þý* *twentigodan dæge* and *þý* *feordan dæge Septembris*, *on the twenty and fourth day of September*.

Healf *half* placed after an ordinal number (like G. *halb*) reduces it by half; as, *óðer-healf* (lit. *second-half*) *one and a half*, (G. *andert-halb*); *þridde-healf*

(lit. *third-half*) *two and a half* (G. *dritte-halb*).<sup>(1)</sup> A'n, twá, þreo, form æn-e *once*, twi-wa (tu-wa) *twice*, þry-wa *thrice*; with the other cardinals, and all the ordinals, síð *a time* is used in the ablative for the same purpose; as, feower, fíf, &c. síðum or síðon *four, five, &c. times*; (þý) forman, óðre, þryddan, &c. síðe *the first, second, third, &c. time*.

## CHAPTER V.

### I.—Verbs. Conjugation.

THESE are two Orders of Verbs, as of Nouns; viz. the Simple and the Complex; <sup>(2)</sup> the former containing pure or open Verbs answering to the Greek in -αειν, -εειν, and -οειν, and to the Latin in -are, -ēre, and -ire; the latter impure or close Verbs, answering to the Greek regulars, and to the Latin in -ěre, &c.<sup>(3)</sup> The Simple Order forms its imperfect by adding -ode (-ede), -de, or -te to the root; the participle past by adding -od (-ed), -d, or -t: in the Complex the imperfect becomes monosyllabic and changes its vowel; the participle past ends in -en.<sup>(4)</sup> The former is divided into three Classes forming one Conjugation; the latter into two Conjugations of three Classes each.

(1) Comp. ἡμισυ-τριτος, L. sesqui-alter, -tertius.

(2) Simple Verbs are by Grimm termed Weak, Complex Strong.

(3) See Rask's Grammar, pp. 67—70.

(4) E. and G. verbs in general follow the A.S., though complex forms have in each not seldom become simple.

II.—*Comparative View of the Chief Tenses.*

## SIMPLE ORDER, OR CONJUGATION I.

Examples—*luf-ian to love*, G. *lieb-en*; *hýr-an to hear*, G. *hör-en*; *tell-an to tell, reckon*, G. *zähl-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	ic <i>luf-ige</i>	— <i>luf-ode</i>	(ge-) <i>luf-od</i>
	<i>I love</i>	— <i>lov-ed</i>	<i>lov-ed</i>
	G. <i>ich lieb-e</i>	— <i>lieb-te</i>	ge- <i>lieb-t</i>
Class II.	<i>hýr-e</i>	<i>hýr-de</i>	(ge-) <i>hýr-ed</i>
	<i>hear</i>	<i>hear-d</i>	<i>hear-d</i>
	G. <i>hör-e</i>	<i>hör-te</i>	ge- <i>hör-t</i>
Class III.	<i>tell-e</i>	<i>teal-de</i>	(ge-) <i>teal-d</i>
	<i>tell</i>	<i>tol-d</i>	<i>tol-d</i>
	G. <i>zähl-e</i>	<i>zähl-te</i>	ge- <i>zähl-t</i> .

## COMPLEX ORDER.—CONJUGATION II.

Examples—*brec-an to break*, G. *brech-en*; *heald-an to hold*, G. *halt-en*; *drag-an to draw, drag*, G. *trag-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	<i>brec-e</i>	<i>bræc</i>	(ge-) <i>broc-en</i>
	<i>break</i>	<i>brake</i>	<i>brok-en</i>
	G. <i>brech-e</i>	<i>brach</i>	ge- <i>broch-en</i>
Class II.	<i>heald-e</i>	<i>heóld</i>	(ge-) <i>heald-en</i>
	<i>hold</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>hold-en</i>
	G. <i>halt-e</i>	<i>hielt</i>	ge- <i>halt-en</i>
Class III.	<i>drag-e</i>	<i>dróh</i>	(ge-) <i>drag-en</i>
	<i>draw</i>	<i>drew</i>	<i>draw-n</i>
	G. <i>trag-e</i>	<i>trug</i>	ge- <i>trag-en</i> .



CONJUGATION III.

Examples—*bind-an to bind*, G. *bind-en*; *dríf-an to drive*, G. *treib-en*; *clúf-an to cleave*, G. *klieb-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	bind-e	band	(ge-)bund-en
	<i>bind</i>	<i>bound</i>	<i>bound-en</i>
	G. bind-e	band	ge-bund-en
Class II.	dríf-e	dráf	(ge-)drif-en
	<i>drive</i>	<i>drove</i>	<i>driv-en</i>
	G. treib-e	trieb	ge-trieb-en
Class III.	clúf-e	cleáf	(ge-)clov-en
	<i>cleave</i>	<i>clave</i>	<i>clov-en</i>
	G. klieb-e	klob	ge-klob-en.

III.—*Simple Order, or Conjugation I.*

CLASS I.      CLASS II.      CLASS III.

INDICATIVE MODE.

	Present.		
Sing.	ic luf-ige (¹)	hýr-e	tell-e
	þú luf-ast	hýr-st	tel-st
	he luf-að	hýr-ð	tel-ð
Plur. we, ge,	hí luf-iað	hýr-að	tell-að
	luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
	Imperfect.		
Sing.	ic luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
	þú luf-odest	hýr-dest	teal-dest
	he luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Pl. we, ge,	hí luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

(¹) Comp. *love, lov-est, lov-eth*; G. *lieb-e, lieb-est, lieb-et, &c.* L. *am-o, -as, -at, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing.	luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Plur.	luf-ion	hýr-on	tell-on
Imperfect.			
Sing.	luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Plur.	luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	luf-a	hýr	tel-e
Plur.	{ luf-iað luf-ige	{ hýr-að hýr-e	{ tell-að tell-e

## INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	luf-ian	hýr-an	tell-an
Gerund.	tó luf-igenne	—hýr-enne	—tell-anne
Part. pres.	luf-igende	hýr-ende	tell-ende
P. past (ge-)	luf-od	(ge-) hýr-ed	(ge-) teal-d.

The first form of the present indicative, and of the imperative plural, is used when the pronoun comes first, or is left out; as, *we lufiað we love, hýrað hear*; the second when the pronoun follows close; as, *telle ge tell ye?* The subjunctive plural sometimes ends in *-an* or *-en*; as, *lufian, hýrden*, and the like. The gerund, which is always preceded by *tó*, and seems to be a kind of dative of the infinitive, answers to our infinitive present, active and passive, and to the Latin supines, infinitive future, active and passive, &c.; as, *Come þú ús tó for-spillanne? camest thou to destroy us? L. nos perditum. Hwæðer is éðre tó cweðanne? whether is easier to say? L. facilius dictu. Eart þú se-þe tó cumenne eart? art thou he that is (art) to come?*

L. qui venturus est. Heó býð tó lufigenne <sup>(1)</sup> *she is (must be, or ought) to be loved*, L. amanda est. The infinitive of the first Class is often formed in -igan, sometimes in -igean, for -ian, and g is put in or left out in some other forms with little or no change of pronunciation. The Gerund of the third Class sometimes makes -enne for -anne. Ge- may be prefixed to any part of verbs in general, but is oftenest used with the imperfect, and especially with the participle past, though not, as in German, to be considered the sign of the latter.<sup>(2)</sup>

---

#### IV.—Class I.

Like lufian are conjugated :

Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.	
hatige	hatode	(ge-)hatod	<i>hate</i>
losige	losode	losod	<i>be lost</i>
clypige	clypode	clypod	<i>call, clepe</i>
fullige	fullode	fullod	<i>baptize</i>
fúlige	fúlode	fúlod	<i>rot</i>
cunnige	cunnode	cunnod	<i>try</i>
wacige <sup>(3)</sup>	wacode	wacod	<i>watch</i>
hangige <sup>(4)</sup>	hangode	hangod	<i>hang</i>
hýrige	hýrode	hýrod	<i>hire</i>
hergige	hergode	hergod	<i>harry</i>
macige	macode	macod	<i>make</i>
bletsige	bletsode	bletsod	<i>bless.</i>

(1) Hence the phrases "house to let," "he is to blame," &c.

(2) Ge- is seldom used before another prefix.

(3) Neut. L. vigilare; act. weccan.

(4) Neut. L. pendere; act. hangan, hón.

Some verbs of this Class, especially those having e for their vowel, form their imperfect and part. past in -ede and ed, as well as -ode and od; as, *herian to praise*, *seglian to sail*, *ge-fremian to profit*, which make *herede*, (ge-)hered, or *herode*, *herod*; *seglede*, and the like: -ode and -od are sometimes changed into -ade and -ad. *Swerian to swear*, borrows some tenses from a complex form, making imperf. *swerede* or *swóre* *swore*; imp. subj. *swóre*; imper. *swera* or *swere*; part. past (ge-)sworen *sworn*. *Folgian*, *fyligan*, or *fylian to follow*, has imperf. *folgode*, *fyligde*, or *fylide*; imper. *folga* or *fylig*.

---

#### V.—Class II.

The second Class forms its imperfect and participle past in -de and -ed, or in -te and -t, according to its characteristic letter; the hard consonants, viz. t, p, c, x, requiring -te and -t; the soft, viz. d, ð, f, g, w, l, m, n, r, s, taking -de and -ed; as,

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
méte	métte	(ge-)mét	<i>meet(met)</i>
lette	lette	lett	<i>let, hinder</i>
dyppe	dypte	dypt	<i>dip(-t)</i>
tæce	tæhte	tæht	<i>teach(taught)</i>
lixte	lixte	lixt	<i>gleam(-ed)</i>
læde	lædde	læded	<i>lead(led)</i>
sende	sende	send	<i>send</i>
cýðe	cýðde	cýðed	<i>make known</i>
ge-lýfe	ge-lýfde	ge-lýfed	<i>believe(-d)</i>

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
wrége	wrégde	wréged	<i>be-wray(-ed)</i>
be-læwe	be-læwde	be-læwed	<i>accuse(-d)</i>
fylle	fylde	fylled	<i>fill(-ed)</i>
týme	týmde	týmed	<i>teem(-ed)</i>
wéne	wénde	wéned	<i>ween(-ed)</i>
lære	lærde	læred	<i>teach</i>
ræse	ræsde	ræsed	<i>rush(-ed).</i>

Some verbs in -gan are contracted; as, þreagan, þreán *to vex, reproach*, tweógan, tweón *to doubt*: pres. þreage or þreá, þreást, þreáđ; pl. þreagađ, þreáđ, &c.; tweóge or tweó, tweóst, tweóđ, &c.; imperf. þreáde, tweóde; part. past þreáđ, tweóđ.

The second and third persons singular sometimes make -est, -eđ, especially when many consonants might otherwise meet; as, nemne (*I*) *name*, nemnest, nemneđ; imperf. nemde: some have both forms; as, læde, lætst, læt, or lædest, lædeđ; part. past læded or læd. Verbs with s, d, and t form the third person in -t; as, ræse, ræst; sende, sent; méte, mét: those with đ in đ, as cýđe, cýđ; imperf. cýđde or cýdde; p. past cýđed or cýd. Verbs in this and the following classes with a double characteristic, drop one letter and take -e in the imperative; as, dyppe, dype, and the like. To this class belong several transitives, derived from intransitives of the Complex Order; as, bærnán *to burn* (act.), from byrnán *to burn* (neut.); drenčan (¹) *to drench*, from drinčan *to drink*; fylłan *to fell*, from

(¹) Comp. G. tránken, fállen, senken, setzen, from trincken, fallen, sincken, sitzen.

*feallan to fall; a-ræran to rear, from a-rísan to arise; sencan to sink (act.), from sincan to sink (neut.); settan to set, from sittan to sit; ærnan to let run, from yrnan to run. Lybban to live, and hycgan to think, borrow some forms from leofian, and hogian: they are thus conjugated:—*

Indic. pres. 1. lybbe	Subj. pres. lybbe
2. leofast	plur. lybbon
3. leofað	Imperf. leofode
plur. {	plur. leofodon
	lybbað
lybbe	Imper. leofa
Imperf. leofode(-st)	plur. {
plur. leofodon	
	lybbe
Inf. pres. lybban	Part. pres. lybbende
Ger. lybbenne	P.past (ge-)leofod.

*Hæbban or habban*(<sup>1</sup>) *to have*, has some forms as if from *hafian*: it is thus conjugated:—

Ind. pres. 1. hæbbe (habbe)	Subj. pres. habbe (hæbbe)
2. hæfst (hafast)	plur. habbon
3. hæfð (hafað)	Imperf. hæfde
plur. {	plur. hæfdon
	habbað(hafiað)
hæbbe (habbe)	Imper. hafa
Imperf. hæfde(-st)	plur. {
plur. hæfdon	
	habbe
Inf. pres. hæbban(habban)	Part. pres. hæbbende
Ger. habbenne	P.past (ge-)hæfed, hæfd.

The first person present is sometimes in poetry *hafu*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. throughout L. hab-ere, G. hab-en.

or hafo. Nabban (for nehabban) *to have not*, has an Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, following habban.

---

### VI.—Class III.

The third Class changes e into ea, é into ó, &c. in the imperfect, forming it in -de or -te, and the part. past in -d or -t by the rules given above. The English synonyms commonly change the vowel in like manner, the German sometimes.

Pres.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
stelle	stealde	(ge-) steald	<i>leap</i>
recce	reahte <sup>(2)</sup>	reaht	<i>reck (raught)</i>
syлле	sealde	seald	<i>sell (sold)</i>
secge	{ sægde sæde	{ sægd sæd	} <i>say (said)</i>
lecge	lede	led	
bycge	bóhte	bóht	<i>buy (bought)</i>
séce	sóhte	sóht	<i>seek (sought)</i>
bringe <sup>(3)</sup>	bróhte	bróht	<i>bring (brought)</i>
wyrce	worhte	worht	<i>work (wrought)</i>

Secge makes 3 sing. pres. segđ or sagađ; imper. sege or saga. The impersonal þincan (G. dünken) *to seem*, must not be confounded with þencan (G. denken) *to think*. þincan makes 3 sing. pres. þincđ (G. dünkt) *(me-)thinks*; plur. þincađ; imperf. þúhte (G. dünkte) *(me-)thought*; part. past (ge-)þúht.

(2) Also rehte, &c.; réce, róhte is another form.

(3) Comp. G. bringe, brachte, ge-bracht.

þencan makes imperf. þóhte (G. dachte) *thought*; part. past (ge-)þóht (G. ge-dacht).

A few transitives also from complex intransitives belong to this class; as, a-cwellan *to kill* (*quell*), from a-cwelan *to perish* (*quail*); lecgan <sup>(1)</sup> *to lay*, from licgan *to lie*; weccan *to awaken*, from wacan *to wake*. Willan <sup>(2)</sup> *to will*, and nyllan <sup>(3)</sup> *to will not*, are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	1. wille	Pres.	{ wille
	2. wilt		{ willon
	3. wile		Imperf.
pl.	{ willað	{ woldon	
	{ wille		INFINITIVE.
Imperf.	wolde (-st)	Pres.	willan
pl.	woldon	P. pres.	willende
<hr/>			
Pres.	1. nelle	Pres.	nelle(nylle)
	2. nelt	pl.	nellon(nyllon)
	3. nele(nyle)	Imperf.	{ nolde
pl.	{ nellað (nyllað)		{ noldon
	{ nelle	Imper.	{ nelle
Imperf.	{ nolde(-st)		{ nellað, &c.
	{ noldon	Infin.	nyllan.

### VII.—Complex Order.

The Complex Order changes the vowel in the imperfect, as in English and German: the imperfect ends

(1) Comp. G. legen, wecken, from liegen, wachen.

(2) Βουλ-εσθαι, L. vell-e, vol-ui; G. woll-en, will, &c. woll-te.

(3) L. nolle, for ne velle.



with the characteristic, which however if *bb* becomes *f*; if *g, h*: in the second pers. sing. and in the plural *h* again becomes *g*.

The Second Conjugation changes certain vowels in the second and third persons sing. present as in German. The part. past sometimes changes its vowel, as in English and German.

Examples—*brecan to break, healdan to hold, dragan to draw, drag.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		INDICATIVE MODE.	
		Present.	
Sing. 1.	<i>brece</i> ( <sup>†</sup> )	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
	2. <i>bricst</i>	<i>hyltst</i>	<i>drægst</i>
	3. <i>bricð</i>	<i>hylt</i> ( <i>healt</i> )	<i>drægð</i>
Plur.	{ <i>brecað</i> <i>brece</i>	{ <i>healdað</i> <i>healde</i>	{ <i>dragað</i> <i>drage</i>
		Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	<i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
	2. <i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
	3. <i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
Plur.	<i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.	
		Present.	
Sing.	<i>brece</i>	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
Plur.	<i>brecon</i>	<i>healdon</i>	<i>dragon</i>
		Imperfect.	
Sing.	<i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
Plur.	<i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon.</i>

(<sup>†</sup>) Comp. G. *breche, brichst, bricht*; *halte, hältst, hält*; plur. *brechen, halten, &c.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		IMPERATIVE MODE.	
Sing.	brec	heald	drag
Plur.	{ brecað	{ healdað	{ dragað
	{ brece	{ healde	{ drage
		INFINITIVE MODE.	
Pres.	brecan	healdan	dragan
Gen.	tó breccanne	—healdanne	—draganne
P.pres.	brecende	healdende	dragende
P.past.	(ge-)brocen	(ge-)healden	(ge-)dragen.

---

### VIII.—Class I.

In the First Class e becomes in the second and third persons sing. present, i or y; i remains unchanged, as in German. The imperfect is formed in æ, which in the second pers. sing. and the whole plural becomes æ; or in ea: in the part. past i sometimes becomes e; e, o, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
{ sprece <sup>(1)</sup>	spriçð	spræc	(ge-)sprecen
{ spece	spicð	spæc	specen
<i>speak</i>		<i>spake</i>	<i>spoken</i>
trede	trit	træd	treden
<i>tread</i>		<i>trod</i>	<i>trodden</i>
ete	yt	æt	eten
<i>eat</i>		<i>ate</i>	<i>eaten</i>
lese	list	læs	lesen
<i>lease, gather</i>			

(1) Comp. G. spreche, sprach; trete, trat, ge-treten, &c. ge-läre, -bar, -boren; stehle, stahl, ge-stohlen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
bidde	bitt	bæd	beden
<i>bid</i>		<i>bade</i>	<i>bidden</i>
sitte	sitt	sæt	seten
<i>sit</i>		<i>sate</i>	<i>sitten</i>
licge	lið	læg	legen
<i>lie</i>		<i>lay</i>	<i>lien, lain</i>
swefe	swefð	swæf	swefen
<i>sleep</i>			
bere	byrð	bær	boren
<i>bear</i>		<i>bare</i>	<i>born</i>
stele	stylð	stæl	stolen
<i>steal</i>		<i>stole</i>	<i>stolen</i>
for-gite	for-git	for-geat	for-giten
<i>forget</i>		<i>forgat</i>	<i>forgotten</i>
gife	gifð	geaf	gifen
<i>give</i>		<i>gave</i>	<i>given</i>

Niman *to take*, makes third pers. pres. nimð; imperf. nam, name, &c. p. past numen. Cuman (cwuman) *to come* makes third pers. cymð; imperf. com (cwom), come, &c. p. past cumen.

Wesan *to be* is thus conjugated:

## INDICATIVE.

Pres. 1. eom <sup>(2)</sup>	Imperf. 1. wæs
2. eart	2. wære
3. is (ys)	3. wæs
plur. synd (syndon)	plur. wæron

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. εἶμ-ι, εἶσ-ι; L. sum, est, sum-us, sunt, sim, er-am, &c.; G. ist, sind, seyð, sey, war, wære, ge-wesen.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	sý, (síg, seó)	Imperf.	wáere
plur.	sýn	plur.	wáeron
Imper.	wes	Inf. pres.	wesan
plur.	{ wesað wese	Ger.	tó wesanne
		Part. pres.	wesende
		Part. past	(ge-)wesen.

With some of these forms the negative *ne* is thus combined :

Pres. 1. (*ic*) *neom* (*I am not*). 3. *nis* (*nys*) ; imperf. *næs*, &c. ; subj. imperf. *nære*, &c.

*Cweðan to say* is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. *cweðe*, *cwyst*, *cwyð* ; imperf. *cwæð*, *cwáede*, *cwæð* (*quoth*), pl. *cwædon* ; subj. pres. *cweðe*, imperf. *cwáede* ; part. past (ge-) *cweden* : it is otherwise regular.

## IX.—Class II.

In the Second Class *á* becomes *æ* ; *ea*, *y* ; *eá*, *ý* ; *ó*, *é*, in the second and third persons : the imperf. has *é*, or *eó* (*e* or *eo*).

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>læte</i> ( <sup>1</sup> )	<i>læt</i>	<i>let</i>	(ge-) <i>læten</i>
<i>let</i>			
<i>slæpe</i>	<i>slæpð</i>	<i>slép</i>	<i>slápen</i>
<i>sleep</i>		<i>sleep-t</i> ( <sup>2</sup> )	

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *lasse*, *lässt*, *liess*, *ge-lassen* ; *heisse*, *hiess* ; *wachse*, *wuchs* ; *laufe*, *läuft*, *lief*, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Slept*, *lept*, *swept*, *wept*, are complex forms become simple : *slep*, *lep*, &c., as also *bet*, are still in P. use.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
háte <i>command</i>	hæt	{ héht <sup>(3)</sup> } { hét }	háten
hó <i>hang</i>	héhđ	heng <i>hung</i>	hangen
wealde <i>govern, wield</i>	wylt	weóld	wealden
fealle <i>fall</i>	fylđ (feald)	feoll <i>fell</i>	feallen <i>fallen</i>
weaxe <i>wax, grow</i>	wyxd	weox	weaxen <i>waxen</i>
beáte <i>beat</i>	beáted	beót (bet)	beáten <i>beaten</i>
blóte <i>sacrifice</i>	blét	bleót	blóten
hleápe <i>leap</i>	hlýpđ	hleóp <i>lep-t</i>	hleápen
swápe <i>sweep</i>	swápeđ (swáped)	sweóp <i>swep-t</i>	swápen
wépe <i>weep</i>	wépđ	weóp <i>wep-t</i>	wépen
cnáwe <i>know</i>	cnæwđ	cneów <i>knew</i>	cnáwen <i>known</i>
heáwe <i>hew</i>	heáweđ	heów	heówen <i>hewn</i>
grówe <i>grow</i>	gréwđ	greów <i>grew</i>	grówen <i>grown</i>

(<sup>3</sup>) Héht is a relic of the reduplication in use in Gothic as in Greek, and of which Latin retains several instances; leólc from lácan to play (O. lake), is of like nature.

The imperfects without an accent are of doubtful quantity.

Hátan when meaning *to be called*, has the simple imperfect hátte, but part. past (ge-)háten.

Hó makes pres. plur. hóđ, hó; imper. hoh; infin. hangan or hón, and is followed by fangan, fón *to take*.

Cneów and the like often become cnéw &c.

Gangan, gán<sup>(1)</sup> *to go*, dón *to do*, and búan *to inhabit, cultivate* (G. bauen, L. colere) are thus conjugated :

## INDICATIVE.

Pres. 1. gange, gá <sup>(2)</sup>	dó	búe
2. gæst	dést	býst
3. gæđ	déđ	býđ
pl. { gáđ	{ dóđ	
{ gá	{ dó	
Imperf. geong, eóde	dyde	búde

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. gá	dó	bú
Pl. gán	dón	bún

## IMPERATIVE.

Sing. gang, gá	dó
Pl. { gáđ	{ dóđ
{ gá	{ dó

(1) S. and P. gang, gae. The contracted forms are most used; eóde is the common imperfect, geong the poetical.

(2) Comp. G. gehe, gieng, ge-gangen; thue, that, ge-than.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres.	gangan, gán	dón	búan
Ger.		tó dónne	
P. pres.	gangende	dónde	búende
P. past	gangen, gán	(ge-)dón	(ge-)bún.

## X.—Class III.

In the Third Class, a becomes æ; éá, ý, &c. in the second and third persons: the imperfect has ó.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scace	scæcđ	scóc (sceóc)	(ge-)scacen
<i>shake</i>		<i>shook</i>	<i>shaken</i>
fare <sup>(3)</sup>	færđ	fór	faren
<i>fare, go</i>			
hlihhe	hlihđ	hlóh	hlogen
<i>laugh</i>			
sleá	slýhđ	slóh	slegen
<i>slay</i>		<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>
hlade	hlæt	hlód	hladen
<i>lade</i>			<i>laden</i>
grafe	græfđ	gróf	grafen
<i>grave, dig</i>			<i>graven</i>
hebbe	hefđ	hóf	hafen
<i>heave</i>		<i>hove</i>	
scyppe	scypđ	scóp (sceóp)	sceapen
<i>shape, create</i>			<i>shapen</i>
wacse	wæxđ	wócs	wæscen
<i>wash</i>			<i>washen</i>

(<sup>3</sup>) G. fahre, fahrt, fuhr, ge-fahren; schlage, schlug; hebe, hob, gehoben; scheid, schied, ge-schieden, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
stande	stent	stóð	standen
<i>stand</i>		<i>stood</i>	
gale	gæld	gól	galen
<i>enchant</i>			
spane	spænd	spón	spanen
<i>allure</i>			
sceade	scyt	sceód(')	sceaden
<i>part, shed</i>			

Sleá makes imper. slýh or sléh; infin. sleán: thus also leán *to blame*, and þweán *to wash*; p. past þwegen, þwogen. Stande sometimes has standest, standeð.

---

### XI.—Conjugation III.

In the Third Conjugation the vowel remains the same in the present; but that of the imperfect is changed in the second person singular, and in the whole plural: the part. past has either the same vowel as these persons, or one near akin.

Examples:—bindan *to bind*, drífan *to drive*, clúfan *to cleave*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	INDICATIVE MODE.	
	Present.	
Sing. 1. binde	drífe	clúfe
2. bintst	drífst	clúfst
3. bint	drífd	clúfd

(') P. *shod*.



Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe
		Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	band	dráf	cleáf
	2. bunde	drife	clufe
	3. band	dráf	cleáf
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

		Present.	
Sing.	binde	drífe	clúfe
Plur.	bindon	drifon	clúfon
		Imperfect.	
Sing.	bunde	drife	clufe
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	bind	dríf	clúf
Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe

## INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	bindan	drífan	clúfan
Ger.	bindanne	drífanne	clúfanne
P. pres.	bindende	drífende	clúfende
P. past (ge-)	bunden	(ge-)drifen	(ge-)clufen.

XII.—*Class I.*

In the First Class, i (y), e, eo, become a (o), ea, æ, in the imperfect, and these in the second person and plural are again changed to u: the part. past has u or o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
yrne <sup>(1)</sup>	yrnd̄	arn	(ge-)urnen
<i>run</i>		<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>
{ frine	frind̄	fran	frunen } frugnen }
{ frigne		frægn	
<i>enquire</i>			
singe	singd̄	sang	sungen
<i>sing</i>		<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
drince	drincd̄	dranc	druncen
<i>drink</i>		<i>drank</i>	<i>drunken</i>
swimme	swimd̄	swamm	swommen
<i>swim</i>		<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>
climbe	climb̄d̄	clomm	clumben
<i>climb</i>		<i>clomb</i>	
swelle	swyld̄	sweoll	swollen
<i>swell</i>			<i>swollen</i>
swelge	swylgd̄	swealh	swolgen
<i>swallow</i>			
melte	mylt	mealt	molten
<i>melt</i>			<i>molten</i>
gelde	gylt	geald	golden
<i>pay</i>			
helpe	hyld̄	healp	holpen
<i>help</i>			<i>holpen</i>
delfe	dylfd̄	dealf	dolfen
<i>delve</i>			
murne	myrnd̄	mearn	mornen
<i>mourn</i>			

(1) G. rinne, rann, ge-ronnen; singe, sang, ge-sungen; trinke, drank; schwelle, schwillt, schwoll, ge-schwollen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
beorge <i>save, defend</i>	býrgð	bearh	borgen
weorpe <i>throw</i>	wyrpð	wearp	worpen
steorfe <i>die, starve</i>	styrfd	stærf	storfen
berste <i>burst</i>	byrst	bærst	borsten <i>borsten</i>
þersce <i>thresh</i>	þyrscð	þærsc	þorscen
feohte <i>fight</i>	fyht	feaht <i>fought</i>	fohten <i>foughten</i>
} bregde } brede <i>braid, draw</i>		brægd	brogden } } broden }
		brit	bræd

Weorðan<sup>(2)</sup> *to be, to become*, is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. sing. 1. weorðe	Subj. pres. weorðe, &c.
2. wyrst	Imperf. wurde, &c.
3. mynd	Imper. weorð
plur. { weorðað } weorðe	plur. { weorðað } weorðe

Imperf. sing. 1. wearð	Infin. pres. weorðan
2. wurde	Ger. weorðanne
3. wearð	Part. pres. weorðende
plur. wurdon	P. past (ge-)worden

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. throughout G. werden.

XIII.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class, *í* becomes in the imperfect *á*, and this in the second person, &c. *i*: the part. past has likewise *i*.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scíne <sup>(1)</sup>	scínd	scán	(ge-)scinen
<i>shine</i>		<i>shone</i>	
wríte	wrít	wrát	writen
<i>write</i>		<i>wrote</i>	<i>written</i>
a-ríse	a-ríst	a-rás	a-risen
<i>arise</i>		<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>
be-swíce	be-swícd	be-swác	be-swicen
<i>deceive</i>			
stíge	stíhd	stáh	stigen
<i>ascend</i>			
a-bíde	a-bíded	a-bád	a-biden
<i>abide</i>		<i>abode</i>	<i>abiden</i>
grípe	grípđ	gráp	gripen
<i>gripe</i>			
ríde	rít	rád	riden
<i>ride</i>		<i>rode</i>	<i>ridden</i>
spíwe	spíwđ	spáw	spiwen
<i>spew</i>			<i>spewn</i>
wríde	wríd	wrát	wriden
<i>writhe, wreathe</i>			

(1) G. *scheine*, *schien*, *ge-schiene*n; *steige*, *stieg*; *greife*, *griff*, *ge-griffen*, &c.

XIV.—*Class III.*

In the Third Class, eó or ú becomes eá in the imperfect; in the second person &c. u: the part. past has o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
reóce <sup>(2)</sup> <i>reek</i>	rýcđ	reác	(ge-)rocen
sceóte <i>shoot</i>	scýt	sceát <i>shot</i>	scoten <i>shotten</i>
creópe <i>creep</i>	crýpđ	creáp	cropen
ceówe <i>chew</i>	cýwđ	ceáw	cowen
leóge <i>lye</i>	lýhđ	leáh	logen
fleóge <i>fly, flee</i>	flýhđ	fleáh <i>flew</i>	flogen <i>flown</i>
beóde <i>bid</i>		beád <i>bade</i>	boden <i>bidden</i>
súce <i>suck</i>	sýcđ	seác	socen
búge <i>bow, bend</i>	býhđ	beáh	bogen <i>bown</i>
lúte <i>lout, bow</i>	lýt	leát	loten

(<sup>2</sup>) G. rieche, roch, ge-rochen; schiesse, schoss, &c.

Ceósan *to choose*, makes third pers. pres. cýst; imperf. ceás *chose*, second pers. cure, plur. curon; p. past coren<sup>(1)</sup>.

Seóðan *to seethe*, has third pers. sýð; imperf. seáð, sode, &c.; p. past soden *sodden*.<sup>(2)</sup> Thus also others in -san and -ðan.

Fleóge is contracted to fleó, plur. fleóð, fleó; infin. fleógan, fleón; thus likewise teógan, teón *to draw, tug*: wreón *to cover*, and þeón *to thrive*, have only the contracted forms.

Seón *to see*, makes imperf. seáh or séh, sáwe or sége, &c. imper. seóh or sýh; part. present seónde; part. past (ge-)sewen, or segen.

Ge-feón (-feán) *to rejoice*, has imperf. ge-feáh or -féh, ge-fage or -fege; part. past ge-fagen, -fægen. Beón *to be*, is defective :

Indic. pres. 1. beó <sup>(3)</sup>	Subj. pres. beó
2. býst	plur. beón
3. býð	Imper. beó
plur. { beóð	plur. { beóð
{ beó	{ beó.

Infin. beón. Ger. tó beónne. Part. pres. beónde.

#### XV.—*Anomalous Verbs.*

The following verbs are Anomalous, having for their present an old imperfect of the Complex Order, and for their imperfect one formed since after the Simple Order.

(<sup>1</sup>) G. kiese, kor, ge-koren.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. siede, sott, ge-sotten.

(<sup>3</sup>) G. bin, bist.

Pres. 1. 3. A'h, 2. áge, pl. ágon (*owe*); imperf. áhte (*ought*); infin. ágan; p. past. ágen: *own, possess.* Likewise combined with ne; náh, náhte, &c.

An, 2. unne, pl. unnon; imperf. úđe; inf. unnan; p. past (ge-)unnen: *grant.*

Can<sup>(2)</sup> (*can*); 2. cunne or canst, pl. cunnon; imp. cúđe (*could*); inf. cunnan; p. past (ge-)cúđ: *know, ken, be able.*

Deáh, duge, dugon; imp. dóhte; inf. dúgan: *be good, brave, worth.*

Dear, dearst, durron; subj. durre: imp. dorste (*durst*); inf. dearan: *dare.*

Ge-man<sup>(3)</sup>, ge-manst, ge-munon: imp. ge-munde; inf. ge-munan: *remember.*

Mæg<sup>(4)</sup>, miht, magon (*may*); subj. mæge (*mage*); imp. mihte (*meahte*) (*might*); inf. magan: *be able.*

Mót<sup>(5)</sup>, móst, móton; subj. móte; imp. móste: *may, might, must.*

Sceal<sup>(6)</sup> (*shall*), scealt (*shalt*), sceolon (*sculon*); subj. scyle; imp. sceolde (*should*); inf. sculan: *owe.*

Wát<sup>(7)</sup> (*wot*), wást, witon; imp. wiste (*wisse*) (*wist*); subj. wíte; imper. wíte, wítađ; inf. wítan; ger. tó wítanne (*to wit*); p. pres. wítende; p. past witen: *know.* Thus also nýtan *to know not.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. L. novi *I know*; G. kenne, kann, kannte, konnte, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. L. defective me-min-i *I remember.*

(<sup>4</sup>) G. mag, möge, mögte, &c.

(<sup>5</sup>) G. muss, musste, &c.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. soll, sollte, &c.

(<sup>7</sup>) Comp. oída *I know*; G. weiss, wusste, wissen; L. scio; as distinguished from can (c n á we) γινωσκω, L. novi.

þearf<sup>(1)</sup>, þearft or þurfe, þurfon; subj. þurfe; imp. þorfte; inf. þearfan: *need*.

### XVI.—*Auxiliaries, &c.*

The A. S. has no future tense, the present serving for both: wille and sceal, like G. will and soll, imply will, duty, and the like, and are not used like *will* and *shall*, to form a simple future; the present of beón has commonly a future power. The perfect and pluperfect are formed as in English, German, &c. by means of the verb *to have*; as, ic hæbbe (ge-)lufod *I have loved*.<sup>(2)</sup> The participle past being as in the above-named tongues the only true passive form, the passive tenses are formed throughout by the help of the auxiliaries wesan, weorðan, and beón *to be*; as, present ic eom, or weorðe lufod<sup>(3)</sup> *I am loved*; imperf. ic wæs, or weardð lufod; perf. ic eom lufod worden *I have been loved*; pluperf. ic wæs lufod worden *I had been loved*; future, ic beó lufod *I shall be loved*.

Impersonal verbs are like those of other languages; as, hit rindð *it rains*; hit ge-limpð *it happens*. Some have a passive sense; as, a-lýfð *it is allowed, lawful* (L. licet); ge-wyrð *it is agreed, seems good* (L. convenit).

(1) G. darf, durfte.

(2) The imperfect is often used for the pluperfect.

(3) Comp. G. ich habe, hatte, werde, wurde, ge-liebt; ich bin, war, geliebt worden.



## CHAPTER VI.

I.—*Formation of Words. Prefixes.*

As in Greek, Latin, German, &c. this branch of the language must be strictly attended to, if we would learn the origin, gender, and inflection of words: it consists of Derivation, and Composition, in both which the A. S. closely resembles the German. Derivation either modifies the meaning of a word by putting before it a prefix, or changes its part of speech, and inflection, by adding a termination. Composition forms new words by joining one or more together.

The following are the chief prefixes:

un- (on-) (L. *in-*; E. and G. *un-*): un-scyldig (G. un-schuldig) *in-nocent*; un-tigian *to un-tie*.

n- (ne *not*; L. *ne*): n-yllan (for newillan; L. *n-olle* for *ne velle*) *to will not, nill*; n-án *none*.

mis- (E. *mis-*; G. *miss-, misse-*): mis-truwian (G. mis-trauen) *to mis-trust*; mis-dæd (G. *misse-that*) *mis-deed*.

wan-<sup>(4)</sup> (wana *wanting*): wan-hál *unhealthy*.

to-<sup>(5)</sup> (L. *dis-*; G. *zer-*): to-breca (L. *dis-rumpere*, G. *zer-brechen*) *to break in pieces*; to-drífan (L. *dis-pellere*, G. *zer treiben*) *to scatter, drive away*.

<sup>(4)</sup> Hence O. *wan-hope* (D. *wan-hoop*) *despair*; *wan-trust* (D. *wan-trouw*) *mis-trust*.

<sup>(5)</sup> Hence O. *to-broken, to-torn* &c. The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *tó*.

for-<sup>(1)</sup> (L. *per-*; F. *for-*; G. *ver-*): for-beódan (G. *ver-bieten*) *to for-bid*; for-swerian (L. *per-jurare*) *to for-swear*; for-gán *to for-go*; for-bærnian (G. *ver-brennen*) *to burn up, consume*; for-gifan (G. *ver-geben*) *to give away, for-give*.

wider- (wið *against*; G. *wider-*): wider-saca (G. *wider-sacher*) *adversary*.

and- (ávrī; G. *ant-*): and-wlíta (G. *ant-litz*) *countenance*.

ge- (G. *ge-*; L. *com-, con-, co-*): has in general a collective sense; as, ge-bróðra (G. *ge-brüder*) *brethren*; ge-scý (G. *ge-schuhe*, F. *chaussure*) *shoes*; ge-mæne (G. *ge-mein*, L. *com-mune*) *common*; ge-fera (G. *ge-fährte*, L. *com-es*) *companion*; it forms active verbs from neuters, nouns, &c. as, ge-standan *to urge*; ge-þencan (G. *ge-denken*) *to think of, remember*; ge-strangian *to strengthen*; ge-leánian *to reward*; ge-niðerian *to degrade, condemn*; from standan, þencan, strang, leán (*reward*), niðer; or gives a figurative sense; as, biddan *to ask, beg*, ge-biddan *to pray*. Many words, however, take ge- without any change of meaning; as, seón, ge-seón *to see*; hýran, ge-hýran *to hear, obey*; mearc, ge-mearc *mark, limit*; rúm, ge-rúm *wide, roomy*.

be- (E. and G. *be-*) makes neuter verbs active; as, gán *to go*, be-gán *to commit, &c.* (G. *gehen, be-gehen*); feran *to go*, be-feran *to travel over* (G. *fahren, be-fahren*). It is sometimes privative; as, bycgan *to buy*, be-bycgan *to sell*; be-heáfðian *to be-head*: often in-

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence O. *for-done, for-spent, &c.* The prefix *fo r-* must not be confounded with the *preposition for*, which seems not to occur in composition.

tensive; as, reáfian *to rob*, be-reáfian *to be-reave* (G. rauben, be-rauben); be-gyrdan (G. be-gürten) *to begird*; or otherwise modifies the sense; as, be-healdan *to be-hold*, be-sprecan (G. be-sprechen) *to be speak*.

ed- (*again, re-*): ed-niwian *to re-new*.

sin- (*simle always, L. semper*): sin-grén *ever-green*.

sam- (*L. semi-*): sam-cuce<sup>(2)</sup> *half-quick, half-dead*.

æg- or ge- gives pronouns and adverbs an indeterminate sense; as, æg-hwylc (ge-hwylc) *each, every*, æg-hwider *whithersoever*.

## II.—Nominal Terminations.

The following are the chief Nominal Terminations, denoting for the most part persons:

-a<sup>(3)</sup>: cemp-a *warrior, champion*; hunt-a *hunter*; bog-a *bow*.

-ere: (E. and G. -er; L. -or): reáf-ere (G. räub-er) *robb-er*; sæd-ere (L. sat-or) *sow-er*.

-end (from the part. pres.): Hæl-end (G. Heil-and) *Saviour, healer*; weald-end *ruler*.

-e: hyrd-e *herd, keeper*; sig-e *victory*; riht-wís-e *righteousness*.

-el, -ol, -l (E. -le; G. -el): byd-el (G. bed-el) *herald, bead-le*; gaf-ol *tribute, gav-el*; set-l (G. sess-el) *seat, sett-le*.

-ing: æðel-ing *prince, young noble*; Wóden-ing *son of Woden*; earm-ing *poor wretch*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Cuc, cucu, cucen, cwic (-e) are also found.

(<sup>3</sup>) Answering sometimes to L. -o; as, gum-a, L. hom-o *man, groom*; hence brýd-gum a G. bräuti-gam, *bride-groom*.

-ling (E. *-ling*; G. *-lein, -ling*): cnæp-ling (G. knäb-lein) *little boy*; deór-ling (G. theuer-ling) *darling*.

-inle (L. *-uncul-us, -a*): ráp-inle *little rope*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-chen*): mægd-en *maid-en*, from mægd *maid* (G. magd, mäd-chen); cyc-en *chick-en*, from cocc *cock*.

-en (E. *-en*): þeód-en *sovereign*; byrd-en *burth-en*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-in*). Feminines from masculines sometimes change the vowel; as, þen, þiu-en *slave, female slave*; fox, fyx-en (G. fuchs, fuchs-in) *fox, vix-en*; sometimes not; as, þeow, þeow-en *slave*. Some change the vowel, and take -e; others change the vowel only; as, mearh, myr-e *horse, mare*; wulf, wylf (G. wolf, wölf-in) *wolf, she-wolf*.

-estre (E. and D. *-ster*): sang-estre (D. zang-ster) *song-ster*, from sangere *singer*; sæm-estre *seam-ster*, from sæm-ere *seamer, tailor*.<sup>(1)</sup>

The following denote a state, action, or the like:

-dóm (E. *-dom*; G. *-thum*): wís-dóm *wis-dom*; cyne-dóm<sup>(2)</sup> (G. könig-thum) *king-ship*.

-hád (E. *-head, -hood*; G. *-heit*): mæden-hád *maid-en-head*; cild-hád (G. kind-heit) *child-hood*.

<sup>(1)</sup> In *songstr-ess, seamstr-ess*, a Latin-French termination has been super-added. *Huck-ster, malt-ster, tap-ster*, and the like, are the true feminines of *hawk-er, malt-er, tapp-er*, &c. *Spin-ster* is yet rightly used.

<sup>(2)</sup> We have confounded *-dom* and *-ric*, but *-dóm* was properly the *office, rank, -rice the territory*: thus, cyne-dóm, cyne-ríce (G. könig-reich); bisceop-dóm, bisceop-ríce, and the like.

-scipe (E. *-ship* ; G. *-schaft*) : hláford-scipe *lordship* ; freónd-scipe (G. *freund-schaft*) *friend-ship*.

-lác (E. *-lock*) : wíf-lác, *wed-lock*.

-að, -oð : hunt-að *hunting* ; war-oð *sea-shore*.

-uð, -ð (E. *th* ; G. *-end*) : geóg-uð (G. *jug-end*) *youth* ; treów-ð *troth, truth*.

-leást (-lýst ; from adj. in *-leás*) : gýme-leást *heedlessness*.

-ung, -ing (E. *-ing* ; G. *-ung*) : hálg-ung (G. *heiligung*) *hallow-ing* ; leorn-ing *learn-ing*.

-nes (-nys, -nis : E. *-ness* ; G. *-niss*) : car-leás-nes *careless-ness* ; ge-líc-nes (G. *gleich-niss*) *like-ness*.

-u, -eo, -o (G. *-e*) : hæt-u (G. *hitz-e*) *heat* ; mænig-eo (G. *meng-e*) *many, multitude* ; bræd-o (G. *breit-e*) *breadth*.

-els (E. *-le* ; G. *-el*) : ræd-els (G. *räths-el*) *ridd-le* ; sticc-els (G. *stach-el*) *stick-le, sting*.

-ed : rec-ed *mansion* ; eow-ed *flock*.

-m (E. *-om* ; G. *-en*) : bot-m (G. *bod-en*) *bott-om*.

-ot, -et, -t : þeow-ot, þeow-t *slavery* ; bærn-et *burning*.

-d, -t (E. *-th, -d, -t* ; G. *-t*) : ge-byr-d (G. *ge-bur-t*) *bir-th* ; ge-cyn-d *kin-d, nature* ; mih-t (G. *mach-t*) *migh-t*.

-ræden (ræd *counsel*) : hiw-ræden *house-hold* ; mæg-ræden *relationship*.

---

### III.—Adjectival Terminations.

-e : æðel-e *noble* ; fæg-e *fated, fey*.

-ig (E. *-y, G. -ig*) : dreór-ig (G. *traur-ig*) *drear-y* ; bys-ig *bus-y*.

-líc (E. *-like, -ly*, G. *-lich*): leóf-líc (G. *lieb-lich*) *love-ly*; wíf-líc (G. *weib-lich*) *woman-like, woman-ly*.

-isc (E. *-ish*, G. *isch*): cild-isc (G. *kind-isch*) *child-ish*; Engl-isc (G. *engl-isch*) *Engl-ish, Anglo-Saxon*.

-sum (E. *-some*, G. *-sam*): lang-sum (G. *lang-sam*) *tedious, long-some*; wyn-sum (G. *wonne-sam*) *amiable, win-some*.

-ol (-ul) (L. *-ul-us*): sprec-ol *talkative*.

-en (E. and G. *en*): fleax-en (G. *flachs-en*) *flax-en*; hæð-en *heath-en*.

-bære (beran *to bear*: G. *-bar*): lust-bære (G. *lust-bar*) *pleasant*; wæstm-bære *fruitful*.

-cund (cynn *kind, race*): woruld-cund *worldly*.

-iht (G. *·icht*): þorn-iht (G. *dorn-icht*) *thorny*.

-weard (adj. and adv.; E. *-ward*): tó-weard *to-ward, to come*; hám-weard *home-ward*.

-feald (E. *-fold*): án-feald *single, one-fold*; twi-feald, *two-fold*; manig-feald *mani-fold*.

-leás (E. *-less*, G. *-los*): syn-leás (G. *sünde-los*) *sin-less*; ár-leás (G. *ehr-los*) *void of honour, impious*.

-wís (*wise*): ge-wís (G. *ge-wiss*) *certain*; riht-wís *righteous*.

-ern (E. *-ern*): súð-ern *south-ern*.

-tyme: hefig-tyme *troublesome*.

---

#### IV.—Verbal Terminations.

-ian (-igan, -igean) forms verbs (I. 1.) from nouns, adjectives, and particles; as, cear-ian *to care*, ge-hýrsumian *to obey*, wiðer-ian *to oppose*; from cearu *care*, ge-hýrsum *obedient*, wiðer *against*.

C, g, n, or s, sometimes stands before -ian; as, gear-c-ian *to prepare*, syn-g-ian *to sin*, wít-n-ian *to punish*, mæ-r-s-ian *to magnify*; from gearu *ready, yare*, syn *sin*, wíte *punishment*, mære *great, famous*.

-án is contracted from -angan, -ágan, or -agan, and -ahan; as, gangan, gán *to go*; smeágan, smeán *to consider, enquire*; þreagan, þreán *to vex*; sleahan, sleán (G. schlagen) *to strike, slay*.

-ón is contracted from -angan, or -ógan; as, fangan, fón *to take*; teógan, teón *to draw, tug*.

-ettan: hál-ettan *to hail, greet*, from hál *whole, hale*.

After c and g, e is not seldom inserted; as, rá-c-ean, þic-g-ean, for rá-c-an *to reach*, þic-g-an *to touch, taste, &c.*

Other verbs in general form the infinitive in -an.

### V.—Particles.

Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are either primitive words, that is, not to be further resolved in the language treated of, or are formed from nouns (often obsolete), adjectives, &c. governed by a preposition expressed or understood. Of the former kind are nú *now*, geó (iú), *formerly*, eft *again*, get (iet), *yet*, be *by*, &c. for *for*, tó *to*, ac *but*, gif *if*, &c. Of the latter kind, (to take the cases in order) are the accusatives on-weg (a-weg) *a-way*; on-bæc (under-, ofer-bæc) *a-back, back*; (on-)ge-mang *a-mong*; on-géan (a-gen) *a-gain, a-against*; ealne-weg *al-way*.

-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,<sup>(1)</sup> &c. ; as, on-riht-e (L. rect-e)<sup>(2)</sup> a-riht *a-right, rightly*; lang-e (L. long-e) *long*; mid-ealle *altogether*; be-dæle *partly*; tó-sóðe *in sooth, truly*; of-dúne, a-dún *a-down, down*; tó-gædere (æt-gædere), tó-somne (æt-somne, G. zu-sammen), *to-gether*.

líc-e (E. *-ly*; the same, borrowed from adjectives in -líc): sceort-líc-e *short-ly*, strang-líc-e *strong-ly*.

Other ablatives are the conjunctions for-þý *therefore*; (for-) hwý? (*for*) *why?*; datives for-þám *because*, tó-þón-þæt *in order that*, síð-þán (G. seit-dem) *since*.

-um, -on (abl. or dat. plur.): (on) hwíl-um, hwíl-on *whilome, whiles*, wundr-um *wondrously*, hwyrft-um *by turns*, sticce-mælum<sup>(3)</sup> *piece-meal*, be lytl-um and lytl-um *by little and little*, furð-um (-on) *even, just*, on-sundr-on *in-sunder, a-sunder*.

-es (genitive): niht-es<sup>(4)</sup> (νυκτ-ος, G. nacht-s) *of a night, by night*, will-es *willingly*, néd-es *of necessity, needs*, eall-es *altogether*, nall-es *by no means*, sóð es *of a truth*, tó-gean-es *against*, tó-midd-es *amidst*.

-a, -unga, -inga (perhaps gen. plur.): gear-a *of*

(1) Those in -h and -u take g and w, as, heáh, heáge; nearu, nearwe: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(2) L. adverbs in -e were perhaps ablatives, like those in -o, as *ver-o* and the like.

(3) Stic (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. stück); mæl (II. 3) (G. mahl) *meal, time of eating, milking cows, &c.*

(4) The proper genitives of niht, willa, and néd (neód) are nihte, willan, néde; at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in -es or s; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in -ος &c. and -is.



*yore*, son-a *soon*, *forthwith*, eall-unga *altogether*, hol-  
inga *in vain*, yrr-inga *angrily*.

-an (an oblique case): niw-an *of late*, newly, for-an  
*before*, on-midd-an, a-midd-an *a-mid*, wið-út-an  
*without*, búf-an<sup>(5)</sup> (for be-úf-an) *a-bove*; a-bút-an (for  
on-be-út-an) *a-bout*, &c.

Other adverbial terminations are:—

-der (*motion to—*): hi-der *hi-ther*, þi-der *thi-ther*,  
hwi-der *whi-ther*.

-on, -an (*motion from—*): heon-on *hence*, þan-on  
*thence*, hwan-on *whence*.

-r, -ra, -e, &c. (*rest in—*): her *here*, þær (þara) *there*  
hwær (hwar) *where*; inn-e *within*, út-e *without*.

## VI.—Composition.<sup>(6)</sup>

The A. S. language, like the Greek, German, &c. abounds in compound words, of which the last part commonly settles the part of speech. Nouns and adjectives are usually compounded together, and with verbs, without change, as in English, &c.; as, fíc-treow *fig-tree*, heáfod-man (G. haupt-mann) *head-man*, captain, heáh-sacerd, *high-priest*, bisceop-ric *bishop-ric*, stæf-cræft *letter-craft*, grammar, medo-ærn<sup>(7)</sup> *mead-hall*, þeow-boren *slave-born*, stede-fæst *stead-fast*, bealo-full *baleful*, snáw-hwít (G. schnee-weiss) *snow-white*, íren-heard (G. eisen-hart) *as hard as iron*, lif-fæstan

<sup>(5)</sup> D. b o ven; "Oranje boven!"

<sup>(6)</sup> See Rask, pp. 113—117.

<sup>(7)</sup> Or -e rn; sealt-ern salt-ern.

to *quicken*, ful-fremman (G. voll-bringen) to *ful-fil*, and the like.

A noun, however, standing first, is often put in the genitive case, especially in local names; as, *dómes-dæg doom's-day*, *hilde-byrne war-corslet*; *Engla-land England, land of the Angles*; *Cant-wara-burh Canterbury, burgh of the Kenters*; *Cinges-tún King's-town, Kingston*; *Beorminga-hám Birming-ham, home of the Beormings*; *Oxena-ford Ox-ford, ford of oxen*; from *dóm, hild, Engle, Cant-ware, cing, Beorming, oxa*. One or each part is sometimes shortened, &c.; as, *frum-cenned first-born*, *æl-beorht all-bright*, *mild-heort mild-hearted*; from *fruma beginning, eall, milde, heorte*. Prepositions and adverbs commonly stand before verbs, &c. without change, as in English, German, &c.; as, *ymb-gang (G. um-gang) circuit*; *þurh-faran (G. durch-fahren) to go through*; *wið-standan (G. wider-stehen) to with-stand*; *tó-cyme coming to (L. ad-ventus)*; *fore-rynel fore-runner*; *fore-mihtig (L. præ-potens) very mighty*; *úp-riht (G. auf-recht) up-right*; *úp-stígan<sup>(1)</sup> (G. auf-steigen) to go up*; *níder-stígan (G. nieder-steigen) to go down*; *ford-gán (G. fort-gehen) to go forth*; *út-lág out-law (L. ex-lex)*; *ofer-cuman to over-come*; *ofer-mód (G. über-muth) pride*; *under-niman (G. unter-nehmen) to under-take*; *fram-ge-wítan to depart from*; *in-láedan (G. ein-leiten) to lead in*; *geond-geótan to pour through, suffuse*; *on-gean-cyrran to turn back again*; *of-sceótan*

(<sup>1</sup>) Stígan (G. steigen) answers to L. scandere; ad-scendere, descendere, &c.

(G. ab-schiessen) *to shoot off*; æfter-fyligend *successor, one who follows after*; mid-síðian *to travel with*; sundor-spræc *conversation apart*; samod-(sam-)-wyr-an *to work together, co-operate*.

The preposition *be*, *bi*, usually becomes *big* in composition; as, *big-spel* (G. *bei-spiel*) *example, parable*; *big-standan* (G. *bei-stehen*) *to stand by*; it may thus be known from the particle *be*, which sometimes becomes *bi*; as, *be-standan*, *bi-standan* (G. *be-stehen*) *to stand on, occupy*.<sup>(2)</sup> *On* often becomes *an-* or *a-*; as, *on-bídan*, *an-bídan*, *a-bídan* *to a-bide*. *Æt* and *ođ* in composition often mean *from, away*; as, *æt-berstan* *to burst away*, *ođ-yrnan* *to run away, escape*, like G. *ent-bersten, -rinnen*.

Particles are also freely compounded together.

Prepositions, and other particles in composition, are often parted from their verb, as in German; but the same rules can hardly be given in A. S.

In general, *þurh*, *úp*, *niðer*, *tó*, *forð*, *út*, *in*, *on*, *bi* (*big*) are separable; *a-*, *an-*, *be-*, *ge-*, *ed-*, *un-*, *or-*, *mis-*, *ođ*, *and-*, *wið*, *sam-*, *for-*, *to-*, are inseparable; *æt*, *of*, &c. are rarely separated.

## CHAPTER VII.

### I.—*Syntax*.

THE A.S. Syntax in general resembles that of Greek and German; but it bears the closest likeness, with some remarkable points of difference from that and other

<sup>(2)</sup> See Formation of Particles.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære tíde þa Gotan wið Rómana-ríce gewinn úp-a-hófon, *at that time the Goths raised up war against the Roman empire.*

þá Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beón wolde, þá wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte for-spillan, *when Darius saw that he should be overcome, then he would lose his life in the fight.*

We sceolon mid biternysse sóðre be-hreowsunge úre mód ge-cláensian, *we must with the bitterness of true repentance cleanse our mind.*

Often, however, sentences are in this and other respects framed as in English; and on the whole this part of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student, and may be better learned from reading than from any rules that might be given.

---

## II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Nouns of time answering to the question, “how long?” are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan *all the week.*

Þrý dagas, or þrym dagum *three days.*

Answering to the question “when?” they stand in the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

þý feorðan dógore *on the fourth day.*

On þissum geare *in this year.*

Ussa tída<sup>(1)</sup> *in our times.*

Measure, value, age, and the like, are used in the genitive; as,

Twegra elna heáh *two ells high.*

Ynces lang *an inch long.*

þreora mila brád *three miles broad.*

Sex peninga wyrðe *worth six pence.*

A'nes geares lamb *a lamb of one year.*

The matter to which a measure, &c. is applied, stands in the genitive; as,

Hund mittena hwætēs *a hundred measures of wheat.*

Hund-teontig punda goldes *a hundred pounds of gold.*

It sometimes remains unchanged; as,

Twegen marc gold<sup>(2)</sup> *two marks of gold.*

Quality, praise, or blame, stands in the genitive; as,

A'r-wyrðre ylðo *of venerable age.*

Fægernes and-wlitan *of fair countenance.*

Two ablatives or datives are used absolutely like the L. double ablative; as,

Ge-togene þý wæpne<sup>(3)</sup> *the weapon (being) drawn.*

A-fundenum sceápe *the sheep (being) found.*

Two datives, the latter governed by tó, are used like the L. double dative; as,

þæt he ús tó fultume sý<sup>(4)</sup> *that he may be (for) a help to us.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. F. de nos temps.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. zwei mark gold.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. stricto telo; ove repertâ.

(<sup>4</sup>) L. ut nobis auxilio sit.

The means or instrument stands in the ablative or dative, with or without the preposition *mid*; as,

Hine *mid þý heofon-lícan weg-nyste ge-trym-mende* *strengthening himself with that heavenly viaticum.*

þý *betstan leóðe ge-glenged* *adorned with the best lay.*

Heó hí *sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-fræt wode* *she adorned herself with royal attire.*

Híg *sprecað niwum tungum* *they shall speak with new tongues.*

### III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

Adjectives in general, especially those denoting want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, and the like, have a genitive case of the noun which defines them, and often stand after it; as,

Feos wana *wanting money.*

Freónda leás *lacking friends.*

Hrægles þearfa *devoid of raiment.*

Earn ætes georn *an eagle eager for food.*

Ac ic heora eom swíðe gifre *but I am very greedy of them.*

Bóca gleáw *skilful in books.*

Un-wís God-cundan Naman *ignorant of the Divine Name.*

Hí næron his ge-myndige *they were not mindful of him.*

Módes blíðe *blithe of mood.*

Síðes wérig *weary of travel.*

Mægenes strang *strong of might.*

Ysig feðera *icy of wings.*

They sometimes take an ablative; as,

Wintrum geong *young in years.*

Blind bām eágum *blind of both eyes.*

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative; as,

þeah he him leóf wære *though he were dear to them.*

Eallum and-feng *acceptable to all.*

þæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-þensum wære *that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.*

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt *useless to every man.*

Derigend-líc býð þe *it will be hurtful to thee.*

Full full, wyrðe *worthy*, scyldig *guilty*, have an ablative, dative, or genitive; as,

Full Hálgum Gáste *full of the Holy Ghost.*

Full deádra bána *full of dead bones.*

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes *the workman is worthy of his meat.*

Se býð dóme scyldig *he shall be guilty of the judgment.*

He is deáðes scyldig *he is guilty of death.*

Ge-líc *like*, has a dative or genitive; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum<sup>(1)</sup> *they are like the children.*

Nán man nis his ge-líca *no man is like him.*

The word which determines a comparative stands before it in the ablative neuter; as,

þrym mundum hýrra *three hands higher.*

(1) Thus L. *similes pueris; ejus similis.*

Micle má *much more.*

þý weordra *so much the worthier.*

Comparatives require either þonne or þe *than*, with a nominative, or an ablative or genitive without ; as,

Ge synd sélran þonne manega spearwan, or ge synd beteran manigum spearwum *ye are better than many sparrows.*

Oðer-healf gear læs þe þrittig wintra *a year and a half less than thirty years.*

Se is his mára *he is greater than him.*

Superlatives take a genitive ; as,

Ealra wyrta mæst *greatest of all herbs.*

---

\* \* For the Syntax of Pronouns see Chapter IV.

---

#### IV.—Syntax of Verbs.

Verbs, as in other tongues, agree in number with their subject ; after ælc þára (þæra) þe *each of them that, every one that*, however, the singular is used, agreeing with ælc and not with þára ; as,

Ælc þára þe tó me cymð (lit. *each of them that cometh—*) *every one that cometh to me.*

Swá ge-býrað ælcum þára þe winð *so it befitteth every one that contendeth.*

With a noun of multitude the verb may be either singular or plural ; as,

þá com micel mænigeo and tó him éfston *then came a great multitude and hastened to him.*

Transitive verbs in general, as in other tongues, govern the direct object in the accusative case ; as,



Lufa þínne nextan *love thy neighbour.*

Seó sá ge-tácnad þás and-weardan woruld *the sea betokeneth this present world.*

A xian *to ask*, takes a double accusative ; as,

Nán ne dorste hine nán þing máre axian *no one durst ask him anything more.*

Verbs of naming have an accusative of the object named, and a nominative of the name ; as,

þone un-ge-met líce eargan þú miht hátan hara *the immoderately timid thou mayest call hare.*

Rædan *to rule*, a-bregdan *to draw (a weapon)*, and to-bregdan *to cast off (sleep)*, govern the ablative ; as,

þenden hí þý rice rædan móston *while they might rule the realm.*

A'n of þám þý sweorde a-bræd *one of them drew his sword.*

Mid-þý heó þá þý slæpe to-bræd *when she then had cast off sleep.*

Verbs of bidding, forbidding, serving, following, obeying, consenting to, opposing, pleasing, trusting, injuring, profiting, escaping from ; likewise for-swerian *to forswear*, cídán *to chide*, árian *to honour*, spare, beorgan *to save*, defend, déman *to judge*, oleccan *to flatter*, \*stillan<sup>(1)</sup> *to still*, fylstan *to succour*, efen-læcan *to imitate*, ge-nea-læcan *to approach*, and heorcnian *to hearken to*, govern the dative ; as,

Un-clánum gástum be-být *he commandeth the unclean spirits.*

Ne for-beóde ge him *forbid him not.*

(1) The verbs marked thus \* sometimes govern the accusative.

Ne mæg nán man twám hláf-ordum þeowian *no man can serve two lords.*

Heó him þenode *she served him.*

þa sceáp him fyligeað *the sheep follow him.*

þá se wer hýrde his waldende *then the man obeyed his ruler.*

Gif þú þonne Dryhtne ge-hýrsumast *if thou then obeyest the Lord.*

þes ne ge-þwærede heora ge-þeahte *this (man) agreed not to their counsel.*

Ge þafiað eówera fædera weorcum *ye consent to your fathers' works.*

Him ne wið-stent nán þing *no thing withstandeth him.*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him.*

Eallum his wordum wið-cwædon and wið-wunnon *(they) contradicted and opposed all his words.*

Pilatus wolde þám folce ge-cweman *Pilate would please the people.*

Heó on-gan his wordum truwian *she began to trust his words.*

Ne derode Iobe náht þæs deófles costnung, ac fremode *the devil's temptation hurt Job no whit, but profited him.*

Hú heó þám feónd-licum gástum oð-fleón mage *how she may escape from the hostile spirits.*

Síð-þán hí feóndum oð-faren hæfdon *when they had escaped from the enemies.*

Ac he sige-wæpnum for-sworen hæfde *but he had forsworn the weapons of victory.*

Gif þín bróðer syngað eíd him *if thy brother sinneth chide him.*

þú nelt árian þære stówe *thou wilt not spare the place.*

Beorh þínum feore *save thy life.*

Démað him be eówre æ *judge him by your law.*

He wolde him oleccan mid his hearpan *he would flatter them with his harp.*

Yðum stilde *he stilled the waves.*

Him fylston wel gistas síne *his guests succoured him well.*

Uton for-þý ge-efen-læcan þisum men *let us therefore imitate this man.*

þám deáðe ge-nea-læcende *drawing nigh to death.*

Ypolitus heora wordum heorenade *Hippolytus hearkened to their words.*

Verbs of motion, and likewise on-drædan *to dread*, often have a redundant dative of the subject; as,

Gá þe forð<sup>(1)</sup> *go forth.*

He him hám-weard ferde *he journeyed homeward.*

Him þá Scyld ge-wát *then Scyld departed.*

He him on-dræt<sup>(2)</sup> monigne feónd *he dreads many a foe.*

Wealdan *to wield, govern*, \*on-fón *to receive*, \*milt-sian *to pity*, hlystan *to listen to*, helpan *to help*, \*ge-lýfan *to believe*, wið-sacan *to deny*, ge-feón *to rejoice at*, \*hrínan *to touch*, with its compounds; likewise

(1) Hence "hie thee home," and the like.

(2) O. "I fear me."

wesan *to be*, when implying possession, govern the dative or genitive; as,

Ætla weóld Hunum *Attila ruled the Huns.*

þe on þám dagum ge-weóld cyne-dómes *who in those days ruled the kingdom.*

On-fóh þissum fulle *receive this cup.*

þá on-fengon híg þæs feos *then took they the money.*

He miltsað úrum gyltum *he hath compassion on our sins.*

Ge-miltsa mín *have pity on me.*

Hwý hlyste ge him? *why listen ye to him?*

Hlyste he gódes ráedes *let him listen to good counsel.*

He him helpan ne mæg *he cannot help him.*

Ge-help þú earmra manna *help thou poor men.*

For-þám-þe þú ne ge-lýfdest mínum wordum *because thou believedst not my words.*

We ne sculon þæs ge-lýfan *we must not believe that.*

Iulianus his Cristen-dóme wið-sóc *Julian denied his Christianity.*

þry-wa þú wið-sæcst mín *thrice thou shalt deny me.*

Secg weorce ge féh *the warrior rejoiced in the work.*

Cwen weorces ge-feáh *the queen was glad of the work.*

Ne him hrínan ne mehte fær-grípe flódes *nor might the sudden gripe of the flood touch him.*

þá æt-hrán he hyra eágena *then touched he their eyes.*

þá him wæs manna þearf<sup>(1)</sup> *since he had need of men.*

þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd *the things that are the Cæsar's.*

Verbs of desiring, needing, tempting, wondering at, using, enjoying, \*remembering, \*forgetting, caring for, ceasing from; together with *cepan to take, keep, &c., wénan to hope for, \*neósian to visit, on-byrian to taste, ehtan to persecute, oð-sacan to deny, earnian to earn, deserve, gilpan to boast of, fægnian to rejoice at, \*on-drædan to dread*; likewise *bíðian (bíðan) to hide, wait for*, with its compounds, govern the genitive; as,

We ge-wilniað frides wið eów *we desire peace with you.*

þæs ic wilnige and wisce *that I desire and wish.*

þæt mæden gyrende deáðes *the maiden yearned for death.*

Ne be-þurfon læces þa þe hále synd *they need not a leech that are whole.*

U're man-dryhten mægenes be-hófað *our liege lord requires strength.*

Hwý fandige ge mín? *why tempt ye me?*

For-þón ic his cost node *therefore I tempted him.*

We wundriað þæs wlítan þære sunnan *we wonder at the beauty of the sun.*

(1) L. illi hominum opus erat.

Eówre fýnd wafiað eówer *your foes shall be amazed at you.*

Brúc þisses beáges, and þisses hrægles neót *enjoy this ring, and use this dress.*

Ne ge-mune ic nánra his synna *I will remember none of his sins.*

Ne ge ne ge-þencað þára fíf hláfa? *and do ye not remember the five loaves?*

þú hæfst þára wæpna for-giten *thou hast forgotten the weapons.*

Hí þæs ne gýmdon *they cared not for that.*

Feores hí ne róhton *for life they recked not.*

Héddon here-reáfes *they heeded the war-spoil.*

Ge-swíc þínes wópes *cease thy weeping.*

Sceolde æðeling ealdres linnan<sup>(1)</sup> *the noble must part from life.*

Hí nánre bricge ne cepton *they kept to no bridge.*

He nolde nanes fleámes cepan *he would not take to flight.*

Ne þearf ic ænigre áre wénan *I may not hope for any honour.*

Ge-wát þá neósian heán húses (*he*) *then departed to visit the lofty mansion.*

On-byrige metes<sup>(2)</sup> *let him taste meat.*

Paulus ehte Cristenra manna *Paul persecuted Christian men.*

Hwá oð-sæcð þæs? *who denies that?*

Seó þeód þe his earnað *the people that deserveth it.*

(1) Linnan sometimes has a dative.

(2) We say also "taste of—."

Hú ne gilpst þú þonne heora fægeres?<sup>(3)</sup> *boastest thou not then of their fairness?*

Ne sceal he fægrian þæs folces worda *he must not rejoice at the people's words.*

Híg on-dredon þára Israhela tó-cymes *they dreaded the coming of the Israelites.*

Se hýr-man his ed-leánes an-bídad *the hireling awaiteth his reward.*

Verbs of granting, likewise *tilian to till, get, for-wyrnan to deny, þancian to thank, stýrian (stýran) to chastise*, have a dative of the person or near object, and a genitive of the thing or far object; as,

Se hálga him þæs ge-úðe *the saint granted him that.*

þá þúhte me hefig-tyme þe þæs tó tidienne *then it seemed to me troublesome to grant thee that.*

þá Metod on-láh Medum and Persum aldor-dómes *when the Lord bestowed the supremacy on the Medes and Persians.*

þá Noe on-gan him ætes tilian *then Noah began to get him food.*

þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces weordscipes *who denied him not kingly honour.*

Apollonius hire þæs þancode *Apollonius thanked her for that.*

He him þæs þinges stýrede *he chastised him for that thing.*

Verbs of depriving, likewise *teón &c. to accuse*,

(<sup>3</sup>) A neuter adjective used and declined as a noun.

have an accusative of the near object, and an ablative or genitive of the far object ; as,

Nelle ic þa rincas rihte be-náeman *I will not deprive the warriors of their right.*

Heó hit ne mæg his ge-wittes be-reáfian *she cannot bereave it of its understanding.*

Dyrnum ge-þingum be-togen *charged with secret practices.*

Hwý týhð ús úre hláf-ord swá micles falses? *why doth our lord accuse us of so great deceit?*

Biddan *to ask for*, has an accusative of the near, and a genitive of the far object ; as

Gif his sunu hine bitt hláfes *if his son asketh him for bread.*

Some impersonal verbs govern the person affected in the accusative or dative: hit is often left out ; as,

Hyngrað hine <sup>(1)</sup> *he is hungry.*

Seó swefen þe hine mætte *the dream that he dreamed.*

Hire ge-býrað *it becometh her.*

Hit lícode Herode *it pleased Herod.*

Him þúhte *it seemed to him* (lit. *him thought*).

Ne ge-weardð unc wið áenne pening? *did we not agree for a penny?*

Others have beside a genitive of the far object, after rules for other verbs ; as,

þone weligan lyst an-wealdes *the rich lusteth for power.*

Náenne mon þæs ne tweóð *no man doubts of that.*

(1) Comp. G. es hungert ihn ; es ge bührt ihr ; ihm dünkte.



þe nánre be-hreowsunge ne be-hófað *thou needest no repentance.*

Him þæs ne sceamode *of that they were not ashamed.*

---

V.—*Syntax of Prepositions.*

Prepositions, as in German, &c., require various oblique cases of the nouns before which they are placed; thus,

geond <i>through, throughout</i>	ymb(-e) <sup>(3)</sup>	} { <i>round,</i> <i>about.</i>
þurh <sup>(2)</sup> <i>through</i>	ymb-útan	
wið-æftan <i>behind</i>		

govern the accusative; as,

Gá geond wegas and hegas *go through the ways and hedges.*

þurh his micle ge-þyld *through his great patience.*

Wið-æftan þá burh *behind the town.*

Ymb þæs cyninges slege *about the slaying of the king.*

Ymb-útan þone weall *around the wall.*

The following govern the dative

be (bi, big) <sup>(4)</sup> <i>of, about, by</i>	in-tó <i>into</i>
of <i>off, from, of</i>	ǽr <i>ere, before</i>
fram <i>from, by</i>	feor <i>far from</i>
æt <i>at, to</i>	un-feor <sup>(5)</sup> <i>near</i>
tó <i>to</i>	neah (nean) <i>nigh</i>

<sup>(2)</sup> G. durch.

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. ἀμφι, L. amb-, G. um,

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. ἐπι, G. bei; ἀπ-ο, L. ab, D. af, G. ab-; L. ad; G. zu, &c.

<sup>(5)</sup> Lit. un-far; G. un-fern.

ge-hende <i>near, handy</i>	tó-middes	} <i>amid</i>
æfter <i>after</i>	on-middan	
búfan	} <i>above</i>	} <i>within,</i>
on-úfan		
be-æftan (bæftan)	} <i>abast,</i>	} <i>inside</i>
be-hindan		
be-heonan <i>on this side</i>	æst-	} <i>foran before</i>
bútan <sup>(1)</sup> <i>without, outside</i>	tó-	
be-twynan <i>between</i>	tó-weard <i>toward</i>	
tó-emnes <i>along</i>	tó-eácan <i>besides.</i>	

Be þám heáh-fædere *concerning the patriarch.*

Be mínes fæder leáfe *by my father's leave.*

Far of þínum lande *depart from thy country.*

Of ánre úp-flóran *off an upper floor.*

Æt þám burnan<sup>(3)</sup> *at the brook.*

Fram cild-háde *from childhood.*

Gá tó þínum húse *go to thy house.*

þá híg in-tó þære byrgene eódon *then they went into the tomb.*

Ær sunnan setl-gange *before the setting of the sun.*

He wæs him feor *he was far from him.*

Un-feor þám húse *near the house.*

Neah þám forða *nigh the ford.*

Ge-hende þære ceastre *near the town.*

Æfter þám ge-feohte *after the fight.*

Búfan þære heofenan *above the heaven.*

Bæftan þære mænigeo *behind the multitude.*

Be-heonan þære stræte *on this side the street.*

(1) D. buiten, O. bout, but.

(2) G. binnen, S. ben.

(3) S. burn.

Bútan þære wíc-stówe *outside the camp.*

Bútan ælcum an-ginne *without any beginning.*

Bútan wífum and cildum *besides women & children.*

Be-twynan þám twám mynstrum<sup>(4)</sup> *between the two monasteries.*

Tó-middes þám wæterum *amid the waters.*

On-middan þám treowe *in the midst of the tree.*

Binnan þám ge-telde *within the tent.*

Æt-foran his þrym-setle *before his glory-seat.*

Tó-weard þám háligdóme<sup>(5)</sup> *toward the sanctuary.*

Tó-eácan þám fodre *over and above the fodder.*

Tó sometimes has a genitive ; as,

Tó middes dæges *at mid-day*: likewise in several compound prepositions above and below.

And-lang *along* (like G. ent-lang) governs the genitive ; as,

And-lang þæs wéstenes *along the desert.*

The following govern the accusative or dative ; the former usually, as in Latin, &c., when motion to, the latter when motion from, or rest in, a place, is signified : but this rule is not strictly followed in A. S.

fore <sup>(6)</sup>	} <i>before</i>	on on, in, into
be-foran		in in, into
on-bútan	<i>about, around</i>	(on-)ge-mang <i>a-mong</i>
oð	<i>unto, till</i>	be-tweox <sup>(7)</sup> <i>betwixt, among</i>
úppon	<i>upon</i>	úton } <i>outside,</i>
innon	<i>within</i>	wiðútan } <i>without</i>

(4) Hence *minster* ; G. münster ; all from L. monasterium.

(5) Hence O. halidom : "by my halidom !"

(6) Comp. προ, L. pro, G. (be-)vor ; G. an ; ἐν, L. and G. in ; ὑπερ, L. super, G. über, D. over ; G. unter, gegen, &c.

(7) Like b e-t w y n a n from t w á ; comp. G. zwi-schen from zwei.

ofer <i>over</i>	tó-geanes } <i>against,</i>
under <i>under</i>	on-gean } <i>toward</i>
	be-geondan <i>beyond.</i>

Fore Healf-denes hilde-wísan *before Healfdene's war-chiefs.*

þá he þá be-foran þone graman cyning ge-læd  
wæs *when he then was led before the cruel king.*

Ic eom a-send be-foran hine *I am sent before him.*

Be-foran eallum folce *before all the people*

On-bútan þæt cealf *around the calf.*

On-bútan þám weofode *about the altar.*

Oð Rin þá eá *unto the river Rhine.*

Oð Daniele þám witegan *till Daniel the prophet.*

On þá ealdan wísan *in the old wise.*

He sylf oð-fleáh on Asiam *he himself escaped into Asia.*

On þám heán munte *on the high mount.*

Heó hine in þæt mynster on-feng *she received him into the monastery.*

In ge-limp-lícre tíde *at a fitting time.*

Ic eów sende swá sceáp ge-mang wulfas *I send you as sheep among wolves.*

On-ge-mang óðrum mannum *among other men.*

Be-tweox his magas *among his kin's-folk.*

Be-tweox þære ealdan æ and þære niwan *betwixt the old law and the new.*

þá feoll he úppon hine *then fell he upon him.*

U'ppon ánum beáme *upon a beam.*

Heó be-seáh innon þá byrgene *she looked into the tomb.*

Innon þære healle *within the hall.*

Hí comon ofer þá sæ *they came over the sea.*

Micel man-cwealm be-com ofer þære Roman-  
iscre leóde *a great plague came upon the Roman people.*

Under þære fæstnesse *under the firmament.*

Wið-útan his dóm-ern *outside his judgment-hall.*

Wið-útan þám díce *without the ditch.*

Tó-geanes his fýnd he gæð *he goeth against his foes.*

Hí þá ferdon tó-geanes þám hæðenum *they  
then marched against the heathen.*

Feohtende on-gean hine *fighting against him.*

þá com him þær on-gean *then came there to meet  
him.*

Be-geondan Iordanem *beyond Jordan.*

Be-geondan þám mere *beyond the lake.*

For for, and mid<sup>(1)</sup> with, govern the accusative,  
ablative, or dative; as,

For eall Cristen folc ge-biddan *to pray for all  
Christian people.*

For þý máne *for that crime.*

For hwylcum intingan? *for what cause?*

Mid þá fore-sprecenan fæmnan<sup>(2)</sup> *with the fore-  
said damsel.*

Mid þý áðe *with the oath.*

Mid his ágenum life *with his own life.*

Wið against, with, &c. governs the accusative, dative,  
or genitive; as,

Wið þá reádan sæ *by the Red Sea.*

Wið þín folc *toward thy people.*

þa assan wið hí læswodon *the asses were grazing  
with them.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. für; μετὰ, G. mid.

(<sup>2</sup>) L. femina.

A'na wið eallum *alone against all.*

Eáge wið eágan, tóð wið téð *eye for eye, tooth for tooth.*

Wið þæs holtēs<sup>(1)</sup> *toward the wood.*

He éfste wið þæs heres *he hastened against the army.*

A preposition sometimes stands after its case; as,

Hí him mid sæton *they sate with him.*

Him bi twegen beámas stódon *by him stood two trees.*

It is sometimes parted from it altogether, and placed either next before the verb, or last of all; as,

þe he man-cyn mid a-lýsde *with which he redeemed mankind*

þá ge-nealæhte him án man tó *then drew nigh to him a man.*

Ymb-útan is sometimes divided; as,

Ymb han-cred útan *about cock-crow.*

Wið and weard are sometimes used, the one before, the other after an accusative or genitive; as,

Wið heofonas weard<sup>(2)</sup> *toward the heavens.*

Wið Petres weard *toward Peter.*

## VI.—Syntax of Conjunctions.

The following conjunctions require the verb to be in the indicative mode:

and <sup>(3)</sup> *and.*

eác *eke, also.*

(1) P. holt, G. holz.

(2) Comp. the use of L. ad—versus.

(3) Comp. G. und, auch, so, da, dann, denn, da—da, &c.

ac <i>but</i>	odðe—
swá, swá-swá <i>so, as</i>	óðer-twega—
swá—swá <i>so—as</i>	óðer-þára—
þá } <i>then</i>	ge—
þonne }	ægðer-ge, } <sup>ge</sup> { <i>as well—as</i>
þá } <i>when, as</i>	náðer-ne—ne <i>neither—nor</i>
þá-þá }	swá-þeáh } <i>yet,</i>
(for-)hwý <i>why?</i>	(þeáh-)hwæðere } <i>never-</i>
mid-þý(-þe) <sup>(4)</sup> } <i>when,</i>	ná-læs—ac <i>not only—but</i>
mid-þám(-þe) } <i>while</i>	(for-)þý(-þe) } <i>for, because,</i>
þenden <i>while</i>	for-þám(-þe) } <i>therefore.</i>
síð-þán <i>since</i>	

The following require the subjunctive, though in general, as in Latin, in subordinate prepositions only:

þæt, þæt-te <sup>(5)</sup> <i>that</i>	od(-þæt) <i>until</i>
þeáh(-þe) <i>though</i>	þá-hwíle(-þe) <sup>(6)</sup> <i>(the) while</i>
swylce <i>as if</i>	ær } <i>ere,</i>
þonne } <i>when</i>	ær-þám(-þe) } { <i>before</i>
hwænne }	hwæðer(-þe) <sup>(7)</sup> } <i>whether</i>
hwær } <i>where</i>	sam—sam } <i>(—or)</i>
hwar }	gif <sup>(8)</sup> <i>if</i>
þý-læs(-þe) <i>lest</i>	nemne } <i>unless</i>
tó-þón-þæt <i>in order that</i>	nymðe }
á-þý—þe <i>so much the—as</i>	hú, hú-meta <i>how.</i>

(4) The particle þe is added or not at pleasure to several conjunctions.

(5) G. dass, D. dat ; G. doch, wann, wenn, &c.

(6) Hwíl is a noun, (II. 3.) *while, time* ; G. weile.

(7) Answering to ποτερον—ή, L. utrum—an ; like these hwæðer is properly a neuter pronoun.

(8) The conjunction gif has no more to do with the verb gifan than S. gin has with *given*, or O. an with unnan.

Hwæt dó ic þæt ic éce lif áge? *what shall I do that I may possess eternal life?*

Ic wát þæt hit býð sáwl and líc-homa *I know that it is soul and body.*

Þeáh hwylc of deáde a-ríse *though one arise from death.*

Þeáh-þe ic sceal ealle wucan fæstan *though I shall fast all the week.*

Swylce þú hí ge-sceópe *as if thou hadst created them.*

Þý-læs þú þínne fót æt stáne æt-sporne *lest thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

Tó-þón-þæt he his ríce ge-brædde *in order that he might extend his empire.*

A'-þý un-weoðra þe hine manige men for-seón *so much the unworthier because many men despise him.*

Oð-þæt þú cume tó þám fymrestan *till thou come to the first.*

Oð-þæt se A-lýsend com *until the Redeemer came.*

Þá-hwíle-þe ge leóht habban *while ye have light.*

Þá-hwíle-þe he on life býð *while he is a-live.*

Ær-þám-þe se hana tuwa cráwe *before the cock crow twice.*

Ær-þám-þe ge hine biddað *before ye ask him.*

þonne þú þe ge-bidde *when thou prayest.*

þonne he hám cymð *when he cometh home.*

Sege ús hwænne þás þing ge-weorðon *tell us when these things shall come to pass.*



Ge nyton hwænne seó tíð is *ye know not when the time is.*

Ic axige hwær seó offrung síg *I ask where the offering is.*

Hwar synd þa nigene? *where are the nine?*

Sceáwa hwæðer hit síg þínes suna þe ne síg *look whether it be thy son's or be not.*

Sam hit sý sumor sam winter *whether it be summer or winter.*

Gif wén sý *if there be hope.*

Gif we secgað, of heofone—*if we say, of heaven—*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him.*

Ðú sædest þæt þú ne mihte wítan hú-meta he his weólde *thou saidst that thou couldst not know how he ruled it.*

Hú Boetius hine singende ge-bæd *how Boëtius singing prayed.*

Bútan for *but* has an indicative, for *unless* a subjunctive; as,

Bútan ic wát *but I know.*

Bútan we gán *unless we go.*

Hú ne with an indicative, and hwæðer with a subjunctive, are used to make prepositions interrogative; as,

Hú ne dóð mán-fulle swá? *do not the wicked so?*

Hwæðer ge nú sécan gold on treowum *do ye now seek gold on trees?*

Cwyst þú, or segst þú? *sayest thou? cweðe ge say ye? &c.* serve the same purpose with an indicative; as,

Segst þú mæg se blinda þone blindan lædan?  
*may the blind lead the blind?*

Cweðe ge hæbbe ge sufol? *have ye meat?*

Uton (-an) with an infinitive, expresses a wish or intention; as,

Uton gán *let us go.*

The negative ne *not* stands (like L. non, ne, F. ne) before the verb; as,

Ne for-læt he eów *he will not forsake you.*

Two<sup>(1)</sup> or more negatives are often used, ne being usually prefixed to each word capable of taking it; as,

Ne wép þú ná *weep not.*

þá næs nán cræft þæt ic ne cúðe *then there was no art that I knew not.*

Se-þe nis náðer ne ge boren ne ge-sceapen fram nánum óðrum *who is neither born nor created by any other.*

Bútan *but, only* takes ne before it; as,

We nabbað búton<sup>(2)</sup> fíf hláfas *we have but five loaves.*

## VII.—Syntax of Interjections.

Wá *wo* takes a dative; as,

Wá þám men!<sup>(3)</sup> *wo to the man!* where sý (beó) *be*, or býð *shall be* is understood.

(1) The doctrine, therefore, that “two negatives make an affirmative,” is as foreign to the true spirit of the English as it would be to that of the Greek language.

(2) Comp. F. nous n'avons que.

(3) L. vae homini! G. weh dem manne!

Wá is me<sup>(4)</sup>! *wo is me!*

On the other interjections, of which the following are the chief, nothing need be added:

lá! *O, oh, lo!*

ea-lá! *oh, halloo, alas!*

efne! *behold!*

wá-lá-wá (wei-lá-wei) *well-a-way!*

hwæt! *lo! indeed!*

Leóf<sup>(5)</sup> is used as an expletive; as,

Gea<sup>(6)</sup>, leóf, ic hæbbe *yea marry have I.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Οὐαί μοι ἔστι.

(<sup>5</sup>) Analogous to our P. and familiar use of the word *dear*.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. and D. ja.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PROSE EXTRACTS.

---

N B. Some words that have already occurred are not explained in the notes to this and the next chapter.

---

#### I.—*S. Matthew*, xii. 1—13.

---

\* \* \* The Gospels<sup>(1)</sup>, and parts of the Old Testament, were rendered into A. S. by one or more ecclesiastics named Ælfríc, in the 9th or 10th century; the former from the Vulgate, the latter from some other early Latin translation. The sense therefore, differs now and then from that of the original, and of our authorised version.

---

1. Se Hælend<sup>(2)</sup> fór on reste-dæg<sup>(3)</sup> ofer æceras<sup>(4)</sup>; sóð-lice his leorning-cnihtas<sup>(5)</sup> hyngrede, and híg on-gunnon<sup>(6)</sup> pluccian<sup>(7)</sup> þa ear and etan.

2. Sóð-lice þá þa sundor-hálgan<sup>(8)</sup> þæt ge-sáwon, hí

(1) The extracts from the Gospels are from Mr. Thorpe's edition, the only one founded on a collation of the best MSS.

(2) Hælend (II. 2.) *Saviour, healer* (G. Heiland), from *hælan to heal*: the Name Jesus is thus rendered throughout the A. S. Gospels.

(3) *Day of rest, sabbath*: rest II. 3; G. rast.

(4) *Æcer* (II. 2.) (*corn*) *field*; ἀγρος, L. ager, G. acker: hence *acre*.

(5) *Disciples*: cniht (II. 2.) *youth, servant*; hence *knight*: G. knecht *servant*; comp. L. puer.

(6) On-ginnan (III. 1.) *to be-gin*.

(7) I. 1. *to pluck*; G. pflücken.

(8) Sundor-hálga (I. 2.) *Pharisee*, lit. *separate saint*.

cwædon tó him : Nú þíne leorning-cnihtas dóð þæt him a-lýfed<sup>(1)</sup> nis reste-dagum tó dónne.

3. And he cwæð tó him : Ne rædde<sup>(2)</sup> ge hwæt Daudid dyde þá hine hyngrede, and þa þe mid him wæron,

4. Hú he in-eóde on Godes hús, and æt þa offring-hláfás<sup>(3)</sup> þe næron him a-lýfede tó etanne, búton þám sacerðum<sup>(4)</sup> ánum ?

5. Oððe ne rædde ge on þære æ, þæt þa sacerðas on reste-dagum on þám temple<sup>(5)</sup> ge-wemmað<sup>(6)</sup> þone reste-dæg, and synd búton leahre<sup>(7)</sup> ?

6. Ic secge sóð-lice eów þæt þes<sup>(8)</sup> is mærra<sup>(9)</sup> þonne þæt templ.

7. Gif ge sóð-lice wiston hwæt is : Ic wille mild-heortnesse and ná on-sægdnesse<sup>(10)</sup>, ne ge-niðrode ge næfre un-scyldige.

8. Sóð-lice mannes sunu is eác reste-dæges hláf-ord<sup>(11)</sup>.

9. Þá se Hælend þanon fór, he com in-tó heora gesomnunge<sup>(12)</sup> :

10. Þá wæs þær án man se hæfde for-scruncene<sup>(13)</sup>

(1) A-lýfan (I. 2.) to allow ; G. er-lauben. (2) Rædan (I. 2.) to read.

(3) Loaves of offering, show-bread ; offering II. 3. hláf II. 2.

(4) Sacerð (II. 2.) priest · L. sacerdos. (5) Templ (III. 1.) temple.

(6) Ge-wemman (I. 2.) to pollute, profane.

(7) Leahter (II. 2.) crime, sin

(8) This man.

(9) Mære (I.) great, famous.

(10) On-sægdnes (II. 3.) sacrifice ; on-secgan to offer.

(11) II. 2. lord ; said to be from hláf bread, loaf, and ord beginning, origin ; that is, giver of bread. (12) Assëmbly, synagogue ; G. ver-sammlung.

(13) For-scrincan (III. 1.) to shrink up, wither away : mark the intensive force of for-.

hand. And híg ácsodon hine, þus cwæðende: Is hit a-lýfed tó hælanne on reste-dagum? þæt híg wrégdon (·) hine.

11. He sæde him sóð-lice: Hwylc man is of eów, þe hæbbe án sceáp, and gif hit a-fylð reste-dagum on pyt<sup>(2)</sup>, hú ne nimð he þæt, and hefð hit úp?

12. Witod-lice<sup>(3)</sup> micle má man is sceápe betera<sup>(4)</sup>; witod-lice hit is a-lýfed on reste-dagum wel tó dónne.

13. Þá cwæð he tó þám men: Aðena<sup>(5)</sup> þíne hand. And he hí aðenede; and heó wæs hál ge-worden swá seó óðer.

## II.—*S. Mark*, vi. 32.

32. And on scip<sup>(6)</sup> stígende, híg fóron on-sundron on wéste<sup>(7)</sup> stówe<sup>(8)</sup>.

33. And ge-sáwon híg farende, and híg ge-cneowon manega, and gangende of þám burgum<sup>(9)</sup>, þider urnon and him be-foran comon.

34. And þá se Hælend þanon eóde, he ge-seáh mic-ele mænigeo, and he ge-miltsode him, for-þám-þe híg

(1) Wrégan (I. 2.) *to accuse, be-wray*.

(2) II. 2. *pit, hole*; D. put, L. put-eus.

(3) *Verily, truly, for, but, therefore*; a common expletive: from witian (I. 1.) *to decide*.

(4) Vulgate: "Quantò magis melior."

(5) Aðenian (I. 1.) *to stretch out*.

(6) Comp. *σκαφη*, G. schiff, D. schip; hence also *skiff*.

(7) Wéste (I.) *waste, desert*; G. wüst, D. woest.

(8) Hence *stow* in local names, and *to stow, be-stow*.

(9) Burh (p. 19–20), G. burg (*πυργος*) a (*fortified*) town, burgh.

wæron swá-swá scép<sup>(1)</sup> þe nænne hyrde nabbað ; and he on-gan híg fela læran<sup>(2)</sup>.

35. And þá hit micel ylding<sup>(3)</sup> wæs, his leorning-cnihtas him tó comon and cwædon :

36. Þeós stów is wéste, and tíma is forð-a-gán<sup>(4)</sup> ; for-læt þás mænigeo, þæt híg faron on ge-hende túnas<sup>(5)</sup>, and him mete bycgon þæt híg eton<sup>(6)</sup>.

37. Þá cwæð he : Sylle<sup>(7)</sup> ge him etan. Þá cwædon híg : Uton gán, and mid twám hundred penigum<sup>(8)</sup> hláfas bycgan, and we him etan syllað.

38. Þá cwæð he : Hú fela hláfa<sup>(9)</sup> habbe ge? gáð and lociað<sup>(10)</sup>. And þá híg wiston híg cwædon : Fíf hláfas and twegen fixas.

39. And þá be-beád<sup>(11)</sup> se Hælend þæt þæt folc sæte ofer þæt gréne hig<sup>(12)</sup>.

40. And híg þá sæton, hundredum<sup>(13)</sup> and fíftigum.

41. And fíf hláfum and twám fixum on-fangenum<sup>(14)</sup>, he on heofon locode, and híg bletsode ; and þa hláfas bræc, and sealde his leorning-cnihtum þæt híg tó-foran him a-setton ; and twegen fixas him eallum dælde<sup>(15)</sup>.

(1) Two accusatives as with L. doceo.

(2) Lateness, delay ; from eald.

(3) For sceáp · see p. 5.

(4) Gone forth ; “ far passed.”

(5) Tún (II. 2.) *village, town* : originally *enclosure, farm* : comp. G. zaun *hedge* ; D. tuin *garden*.

(6) Comp. ἐδεν, L. edere.

(7) Syllan (I. 3.) *to give, sell*.

(8) Penig (pening) (II. 2.) G. pennig.

(9) Gen : see p. 32.

(10) Locian (I. 1.) *to look*.

(11) Be-beódan (III. 3.) *to command*.

(12) II. 1. hay ; G. heu. Vulg. “ super viride fenum.”

(13) By hundreds, &c.

(14) Abl. or dat. absolute, p. 75.

(15) Dælan (I. 2.) *to deal, divide, distribute* ; G. theilen, D. deelen.

42. And híg æton þá ealle, and ge-fyllede wurdon.

43. And híg namon þæra hláfa and fixa láfa<sup>(1)</sup>, twelf wílian<sup>(2)</sup> fulle.

44. Sóð-líce fíf þúsend manna þæra etendra wæron.

45. Þá sona he nýdde<sup>(3)</sup> his leorning-cnihtas on scip stígan, þæt híg him be-foran fóron ofer þone múðan<sup>(4)</sup> tó Bethsaida, oð he þæt folc for-lete<sup>(5)</sup>.

46. And þá he híg for-let, he ferde<sup>(6)</sup> on þone munt<sup>(7)</sup>, and hine ána þar<sup>(8)</sup> ge-bæd<sup>(9)</sup>.

47. And þá æfen<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, þæt scip wæs on middre sæ, and he ána wæs on lande.

48. And he ge-seáh híg on réwette<sup>(11)</sup> swincende<sup>(12)</sup>; him wæs wiðer-weard<sup>(13)</sup> wind<sup>(14)</sup>: and on niht, ymbe þá feorðan wæccan<sup>(15)</sup>, he com tó him ofer þá sæ gangende, and wolde híg for-búgan<sup>(16)</sup>.

49. Þa híg hine ge-sáwon ofer þá sæ gangende, híg wéndon þæt hit un-fæle<sup>(17)</sup> gást<sup>(18)</sup> wære, and híg clyp-edon;

(1) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, remnant*; láfan (I. 2.) *to leave*; λειπειν.

(2) Wília (I. 2.) *basket*. (3) Nýðan (I. 2.) *to compel*; from neóð.

(4) Múða (I. 2.) *mouth of a river*; here *lake*; Vulg. "fretum."

(5) For-lætan (II. 2.) *to forsake, abandon*, (G. ver-lassen, D. ver-laaten), *send away*.

(6) Feran (I. 2.) *to go*.

(7) II. 2. *mount*: we have "a mountain."

(8) Þar=þær, þara.

(9) Ge-biddan (II. 1. reflect,) *to pray*.

(10) Æfen (II. 2.) *even*, G. abend: -ung (II. 3.) *evening*.

(11) Réwet (II. 2.) *rowing*; rówan (II. 2.) *to row*; D. roeijen.

(12) Swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. *swink*.

(13) *Adverse, way-ward*; G. wider-wärtig.

(14) II. 2. G. & D. *wind*; L. vent-us.

(15) Wæcce (I. 3.) *watch*.

(16) III. 3. *avoid, pass by*.

(17) *Unclean*; fæle *pure, faithful*: fæl-s-ian *to purify*.

(18) Comp. G. *geist*, D. *geest*, S. *ghaist*.



50. Híg ealle hine ge-sáwon, and wurdon ge-drefede<sup>(1)</sup>. And sona he spræc tó him, and cwæð: Ge-lyfað; ic hit eom<sup>(2)</sup>; nelle ge<sup>(3)</sup> eów on-drædan.

51. And he on scip tó him eóde; and se wind geswác<sup>(4)</sup>; and híg þæs þe má<sup>(5)</sup> be-tweox him wundredon.

52. Ne on-geaton<sup>(6)</sup> híg be þám hláfum; sóð-lice heora heorte wæs a-blend<sup>(7)</sup>.

53. And þá híg ofer seglodon, híg comon tó Genesaret and þar wícedon<sup>(8)</sup>.

54. And þá híg of scipe eódon, sona híg hine geneówon;

55. And eal þæt ríce be-farende<sup>(9)</sup>, híg on sæccingum<sup>(10)</sup> bæron þa un-truman<sup>(11)</sup>, þar híg hine ge-hýrdon.

56. And swá-hwar-swá he on wíc<sup>(12)</sup> odðe on túnas eóde, on stræton<sup>(13)</sup> híg þa un-truman ledon, and hine bædon þæt híg huru<sup>(14)</sup> his reáfes fnæd<sup>(15)</sup> æt-hrinon<sup>(16)</sup>. And swá fela swá hine æt-hrinon, híg wurdon hále.

(<sup>1</sup>) Drefan (I. 2.) *to trouble, offend.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. ich bin es.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. nolite.

(<sup>4</sup>) Ge-swícan (III. 2.) *to cease.*

(<sup>5</sup>) *So much the more*; G. des-to mehr.

(<sup>6</sup>) On-gitan (II. 1.) *to understand.*

(<sup>7</sup>) A-blendan (I. 2.) *to blind*; blind blind.

(<sup>8</sup>) Wícian (I. 1.) *to dwell*: see wíc below.

(<sup>9</sup>) Be-faran=be-feran, p. 55.

(<sup>10</sup>) Sæccing (II. 3.) *sacking, bed.*

(<sup>11</sup>) *Diseased, infirm*; trum firm.

(<sup>12</sup>) Wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling, village*; L. vic-us: hence *wich* and *wick* in local names; D. wijk.

(<sup>13</sup>) Stræt (II. 3.) *street*; G. strasse, D. straat.

(<sup>14</sup>) *At least, at all events.*

(<sup>15</sup>) *Hem.*

(<sup>16</sup>) Æt-hrinan (III. 3.) *to touch.*

III.—S. *Luke*, xx. 9—25.

9. He on-gan þá þis big-spel<sup>(1)</sup> tó þám folce cwedaþ : Sum man plantode<sup>(2)</sup> him wín-geard<sup>(3)</sup>, and hine ge-sette<sup>(4)</sup> mid tilium ( ), and he wæs him feor manegum tíðum<sup>(5)</sup>.

10. Þá on tíðe he sende his þeów tó þám tilium, þæt híg him sealdon of þæs wín-geardes wæstme ; þá swungon<sup>(7)</sup> híg þone and íðelne<sup>(8)</sup> hine for-leton.

11. Þá sende he óðerne þeów ; þá beóton híg þone, and mid teónum<sup>(9)</sup> ge-wæcende<sup>(10)</sup> hine for-leton íðelne.

12. Þá sende he þryddan ; þá wurpon híg út þone ge-wundodne<sup>(11)</sup>.

13. Þá cwæð þæs wín-geardes hláf-ord : Hwæt dó ic ? ic a-sende mínne leófan sunu ; wénunga<sup>(12)</sup> hine híg for-wandiað<sup>(13)</sup> þonne híg hine ge-seóð.

(1) *Parable* : see p. 73. Spel (II. 1.) *story, tale* ; hence *spell*.

(2) *Plantian* (I. 1.) *to plant*.

(3) *Vine-yard* ; D. wijn-gaard : geard or eard (II. 2.) *yard, (garden), inclosure, dwelling, country*.

(4) *Ge-settan* (I. 2.) *to furnish, people* : perhaps a mis-translation of Vulg. "locavit;" we read "let it forth."

(5) *Tilia* (I. 2.) *tiller, husbandman*.

(6) *Tíð* (II. 3.) *time, tide, season* ; G. zeit, D. tijd. *For a long time, many seasons*, Vulg. "multis temporibus."

(7) *Swingan* (III. 1) *to beat, swinge*.

(8) *I'ðel* (I.) *empty, idle, vain* ; G. eitel, D. ijdel.

(9) *Teóna* (I. 2.) *injury, wrong*.

(10) *Ge-wæcan* (I. 2.) *to weaken, injure* : wác (G. weich) *weak*.

(11) *Wundian* (I. 1.) *to wound* : wund (II. 2.) *wound*.

(12) *Perhaps* : wénan *to ween, hope, expect* ; G. wáñnen *to fancy, &c.*

(13) *For-wandian* (I. 1.) *to respect, reverence*.

14. Þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwædon: Her is se yrfe-weard<sup>(1)</sup>; cumað, uton hine of-sleán<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt seó æht<sup>(3)</sup> úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon<sup>(4)</sup> of-slegene. Hwæt déð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymð and for-spildð þa tilian, and sylð þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwædon þá hig þis ge-hýrdon · þæt ne ge-weorðe.

17. Þá be-heóld he híg, and cwæð: Hwæt is þæt a-writen is, þone stán<sup>(5)</sup> þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þære hyrnan<sup>(6)</sup> heáfod<sup>(7)</sup>?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt<sup>(8)</sup>; ofer þone þe he fylð, he to-cwyst<sup>(9)</sup>.

19. Þá sóhton þæra sacerdra ealdras<sup>(10)</sup> and þa bóceras<sup>(11)</sup> hyra handa on þære tíde on hine wurpan<sup>(12)</sup>; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc: sóð-lice híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tó him cwæð.

(1) *Heir*; yrfe (I. 3.) *inheritance* (G. *erb-schaft*) · weard (II. 2.) *keeper, ward-en, &c.*

(2) *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, beat, slay*; of-sleán *to kill outright*. of- in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

(3) *Æht* (II. 3.) *possession*; from *ágan*.

(4) *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject*.

(5) *Comp. G. stein, D. steen, S. stane*.

(6) *Hyrne* (I. 3.) *corner*.

(7) *Heáfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

(8) *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter*: *Vulg. "conquassabitur."*

(9) *To-cwysan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *s-squeeze*, *comp. bar, s-par*; *melt, s-melt*; *tumble, s-tumble, &c. &c.*

(10) *Chief(s of the) priests*.

(11) *Bócere* (II. 2.) *book-man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*.

(12) Or *weorpan*; see p. 5.

20. þá sendon híg mid searwum<sup>(1)</sup> þa þe híg riht-wíse leton<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt híg hine ge-scyldigodon<sup>(3)</sup>, and þæt híg hine ge-sealdon þám ealdron<sup>(4)</sup> tó dóme<sup>(5)</sup>, and tó þæs déman<sup>(6)</sup> an-wealde<sup>(7)</sup> tó for-démanne<sup>(8)</sup>.

21. þá ácsodon híg hine, and cwædon: Læreow, we witon þæt þú rihte spricst and lærst, and for nánum merne wandast<sup>(9)</sup>, ac Godes weg on sóð-fæstnisse lærst:

22. Is hit riht þæt man þám Casere<sup>(10)</sup> gafol<sup>(11)</sup> sylle, þe<sup>(12)</sup> ná?

23. þá cwæð he tó him þá he heora fácen<sup>(13)</sup> on-get<sup>(14)</sup>: Hwý fandige<sup>(15)</sup> ge mín?

24. Y'wadð<sup>(16)</sup> me ánne pening. Hwæs an-lícnesse<sup>(17)</sup>

(1) Searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem.*

(2) *Who might feign themselves righteous men.*

(3) Ge-scyldigan (-ian, see p. 41) (I. 1.) *to accuse*; G. be-schuldigen. Scyld (II. 3.) (G. schuld) *debt, guilt.*

(4) *Deliver him to the chief priests: Vulg. "traderent illum principatui."*

(5) Dóm (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, power, &c.*

(6) Déma (I. 2.) *judge, doomer, deemer*; hence *deemster* (démostre) properly feminine; see p. 66.

(7) An-weald (II. 2.) *power*; G. ge-walt, fem. another exception to the general rule.

(8) Déman (I. 2.) *to judge, for-déman to condemn*: comp. κρινειν, κατακρινειν; G. urtheilen, ver-urtheilen.

(9) The for in for-wandian, is the preposition, not the prefix; the latter is inseparable: see p. 73.

(10) Casere (II. 2.) *Cæsar, Emperor*; G. kaiser.

(11) *Tribute, gavel*; F. gabelle.

(12) *Or*; seldom used independently, but often affixed to other conjunctions: see p. 93.

(13) III. 1. *deceit, fraud.*

(14) *For on-geat*; see p. 5.

(15) *Fandian* (I. 1.) *to tempt.*

(16) Y'wian (eówian) (I. 1.) *to show.*

(17) An-lícnes (II. 3.) *likeness, image.*

hæfd he, and ofer-ge-writ<sup>(1)</sup>? þá cwædon nig: þæs Caseres.

25. þá cwæð he tó him: A-gifað<sup>(2)</sup> þám Casere þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd, and Gode þa þing þe Godes synd.

---

IV.—S. John vii. 14—28.

14. þá hit wæs mid-dæg þæs freols-dæges<sup>(3)</sup>, þá eóde se Hælend in-tó þám temple, and lærde.

15. And þa Iudeas wundredon and cwædon: Húmeta can þes stafas, þonne he ne leornode<sup>(4)</sup>?

16. Se Hælend him and-swarode<sup>(5)</sup> and cwæð: Mín lár nis ná mín, ac þæs þe me sende.

17. Gif hwá<sup>(6)</sup> wile his willan dón, he ge-cnæwd be þære láre hwæðer heó sig of Gode, hwæðer-þe ic be me sylfum spece.

18. Se-þe be him sylfum spicð sécð his ágen wuldor<sup>(7)</sup>; se-þe sécð þæs wuldor þe hine sende, se is sóð-fæst<sup>(8)</sup>, and nis nán un-riht-wísnes on him.

19. Hú ne sealde Moises eów áe, and eówer nán ne healt þá áe? Hwý séce ge me tó of-sleánne?

(1) III. 1. *super-scription*.

(2) A-gifan (II. 1.) *to render, restore, give back*.

(3) Freols (II. 2.) *feast, festival*.

(4) Leornian (I. 1.) *to learn*; G. lernen.

(5) And-svarian (I. 1.) *to answer, governing the dative*.

(6) *If any one*; comp. L. si quis. (7) Wuldor (-er) (II. 2.) *glory*.

(8) *Sooth-fast, truthful, just*; fæst forms the second part of several compound adjectives.

20. þá and-swarode seó mænio and cwæð: Deófol þe sticað on<sup>(1)</sup>; hwá sécð þe tó of-sleánne?

21. þá and-swarode se Hælend, and cwæð tó him: án weorc ic worhte, and ealle ge wundriað.

22. For-þý Moises eów sealde ymb-snidennesse<sup>(2)</sup>; (næs<sup>(3)</sup> ná for-þýg-þe heó of Moises sý, ac of fæderon<sup>(4)</sup>);

23. And on reste-dæge ge ymb-sníðað man þæt Moises á ne sý to-worpen<sup>(5)</sup>; and ge belgað<sup>(6)</sup> wið me for-þám-þe ic ge-hælde áenne man on reste-dæg.

24. Ne déme ge be an-sýne<sup>(7)</sup>, ac démað rihtne dóm.

25. Sume cwædon, þa þe wáeron of Ierusalem: Hú nis þes se þe híg sécað tó of-sleánne?

26. And nú he spicð open-líce<sup>(8)</sup>, and híg ne cwedað nán þing tó him. Cwede we<sup>(9)</sup> hwæder þa ealdras on-giton þæt þes is Crist?

27. Ac we witon hwanon þes is: þonne Crist cymð, þonne nát nán man hwanon he býð.

28. Se Hælend clypode and lárde on þám temple, and cwæð: Me ge cunnon<sup>(10)</sup>, and ge witon hwanon ic

(1) On-stician (I. 1.) *to prick, urge on.*

(2) Ymb-snidennes (II. 3.) *circum-cision*; ymb-sníðan (III. 2.) *to circum-cise*; part. p. -sniden.

(3) Næs (nas) *not*; usually joined with ná.

(4) For fæderum; see p. 12.

(5) To-weorpan (III. 1.) *to over-throw, cast down, destroy*; L. dis-jicere, G. zer-werfen.

(6) Belgan (III. 1.) *to be angry.*

(7) An-sýn (II. 3.) *countenance, appearance.*

(8) Open (II.) *open*; G. offen, D. open.

(9) See pp. 95—6.

(10) Observe the distinction between cunnan and wítan (p. 61, note 7); *me ye know, and ye wot whence I am.*

eom : and ic ne com fram me sylfum, ac se is sóð þe me sende, þone ge ne cunnon.

V.—*Genesis*, ch. xlv.<sup>(1)</sup>

1. Þá ne mihte Iosep hine leng dyrnan<sup>(2)</sup>, ac he drát ealle þa Egiptiscan út, þæt nán fremde<sup>(3)</sup> man be-twyx him nære ;

2. And he weóp, and clypode hlúdre<sup>(4)</sup> stefne, and þa Egiptiscan ge-hýrdon, and eal Pharaones hired<sup>(5)</sup> ;

3. And he cwæð tó his ge-bróðrum : Ic eom Iosep ; lyfað úre fæder nú git? Þá ne mihton his ge-bróðru him for ege<sup>(6)</sup> ge-and-wyrdan<sup>(7)</sup>.

4. Þá gréttē<sup>(8)</sup> he híg ár-wurð-lice<sup>(9)</sup>, and cwæð : Ic eom Iosep eówer bróðor, þe ge sealdon on Egiptaland<sup>(10)</sup>.

5. Ne on-dræde ge eów nán þing, ne eów ne of-þince<sup>(11)</sup> þæt ge me sealdon on þis ríce ; sóð-lice for eówre þearfe me sende God on Egiptaland.

(1) This and the following chapter are taken with some alterations from Thwaites's *Heptateuchus*.

(2) *To hide* (I. 2.) ; *dyrne* (I.) *dark*.

(3) *Fremed, fremd* (I.) *strange, foreign* ; G. *fremd*.

(4) *Hlúd* (I.) *loud* ; G. *laut*, D. *luid*.

(5) II 1. *household*.

(6) II. 1. *awe, fear*.

(7) *And-wyrdan* (I. 2.) *to answer* ; *and-wyrd* (II. 3.) *answer* ; G. *antwort-en*. *Ge-* is used before no other prefixes but *and-* and *ed-*, as should have been stated p. 41, note 2.

(8) *Grétan* (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*.

(9) *A'r-wurð-lic* (II.) *honorable* ; G. *ehr-würd-ig*.

(10) *Land of the Egyptians* : comp. *Engla-land*, &c. p. 72.

(11) (Hit) *of-þinceð it repenteth* : L. *pænitet* : see p. 86-7.

6. Nú twá gear wæs<sup>(1)</sup> hunger ofer ealle eorðan, and git sceolon<sup>(2)</sup> fife on þám man ne mæg náðer ne erian<sup>(3)</sup> ne ripan<sup>(4)</sup>.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-healdene, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban<sup>(5)</sup>.

8. Þæt næs ná eówres þances<sup>(6)</sup> ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willan<sup>(7)</sup> hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hires hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdre ofer Egipta-land.

9. Farað hræd-líce<sup>(8)</sup> tó mínum fæder, and secgað him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orde eallum Egiptum; beódað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige<sup>(9)</sup> on Gessen-lande<sup>(10)</sup>, and beó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna bearn, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hrýðer-heorda<sup>(11)</sup> and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd fíf hunger-gear bæftan<sup>(12)</sup>: dóð þus þæt ge ne for-wurðon<sup>(13)</sup>.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid me is, and ge ge-hýrað hwæt ic tó eów sprece.

(1) *Hus been*: see p. 62, note 2.

(2) *Shall be, are to come.*

(3) *To ear, plough*; L. arare.

(4) I. 2. *to reap.*

(5) See p. 73.

(6) *Of your own accord*: see p. 70. Vulg. has "vestro consilio."

(7) *Through whose will*: see p. 31.

(8) *Quickly*; =hraðe: see p. 25.

(9) *Wunian to dwell*; G. wohnen.

(10) *Land of Goshen.*

(11) Hrýðer (III. 1.) *ox, rother-beast*; G. rind, D. rund: mark the n dropped and the vowel lengthened: see p. 2. Heord (II. 3.) *herd*; G. herde.

(12) *Behind, to come.*

(13) For-weorðan (III. 1.) *to perish*; observe the force of the prefix for-.



12. Cýðað mínum fæder eal mín wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egipta-lande: éfstað and ládað hine tó me.

14. And he clypte<sup>(1)</sup> heora ælcne, and cyste<sup>(2)</sup> híg,

15. And weóp: æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecan wið hine.

16. Þá spræc man ofer-eal<sup>(3)</sup>, and wíd-mærsode<sup>(4)</sup> þæt Iosepes bróðru comon tó Pharaone, and Pharaon wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beád Iosepe þæt he bude his bróðrum and þus cwæde: Sýmað<sup>(5)</sup> eówre assan, and farað tó Chanaan-lande.

18. And nimað þær eówerne fæder, and eówere mægða<sup>(6)</sup>, and cumað tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle Egipta gód.

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas<sup>(7)</sup> tó hyra cilda fare<sup>(8)</sup> and tó hyra ge-mæccena<sup>(9)</sup>, and beód him eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hider swá híg hraðost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(10)</sup> of eówrum yddisce<sup>(11)</sup>, for-þám ealle Egipta spéda<sup>(12)</sup> beóð eówre.

21. Israeles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(1) Clyppan (I. 2.) *to embrace, clip.*

(2) Cyssan (I. 2.) *to kiss*; G. küssen. (3) *Everywhere*; G. über-all.

(4) Wíd-mærsian *to noise, spread abroad*; from wíd and mære.

(5) Sýman (I. 2.) *to loud.* (6) Mægð (II. 3.) *family, household, tribe.*

(7) Wægn, wæn (II. 2.) *wagon, wain*; G. wagen.

(8) Far (II. 3.) *going, journey*; hence fare.

(9) Ge-mæcca, -e (I. 2, 3.) *husband, wife, companion, mate*; O. make.

(10) Vulg. "Nec dimittatis quicquam."

(11) Yddisc *food*, from etan; hence P. eddish, ashes, &c. *feed for cattle*, after-grass, stubble.

(12) Spéd *wealth.*

Iosep him sealde wænas eal-swá Pharao him beád, and fór-mete<sup>(1)</sup>,

22. And sealde hyra ælcum twá scrúd<sup>(2)</sup>; and he sealde Beniamine fíf scrúd, and þreo hundred sylfringa<sup>(3)</sup>.

23. And he sende his fæder tyn assan þe wæron ge-sýmed mid feo, and mid hrægle<sup>(4)</sup>, and mid Egipta welon<sup>(5)</sup>, and tyne þe báron hwáete and hláf.

24. Witod-líce he let þá his ge-bróðru faran, and cwæð tó him: Ne for-láete ge nán þing<sup>(6)</sup> be wege, ac beóð swíðe ge-sóme<sup>(7)</sup>.

25. Híg foron of Egipta-lande, and comon tó Chanaan-lande tó Iacobe hyra fæder,

26. And cwádon tó him: Iosep lyfað þín sunu, and wealt ealles Egipta-landes. Þá Iacob þæt ge-hýrde þá þúhte him swylce he of hefigum slæpe a-wacode,

27. And þeáh he him ne ge-lýfde, híg rehton<sup>(8)</sup> him hyra færeld<sup>(9)</sup> be ende-byrdnesse<sup>(10)</sup> and þá he ge-seáh þa wænas, and ealle þa þing þe him ge-sende wæron, his gást weardð ge-ed-cwicod<sup>(11)</sup>,

(1) "Provision for the way;" fór (II. 3.) *journey*; mete (II. 2.) *meat*.

(2) Vulg. "stolas;" "changes of raiment:" scrúd (II. 1.) *garment, shroud*.

(3) Sylfring (II. 2.) "piece of silver."

(4) Hrægl (II. 2.) *raiment, garment*; hence *night-rail*.

(5) Wela (I. 2.) *weal, wealth*: pl. *riches, prosperity*.

(6) Perhaps repeated by mistake from v. 5. Vulg. has here "Ne irascamini:" we "see that ye fall not out."

(7) *Mild, gentle*.

(8) Reccan (II. 2.) *to relate*.

(9) *Going, journey, or perhaps, how they had fared*.

(10) *In order, succession*: Vulg. "Illi econtra referebant omnem ordinem rei."

(11) *Ge-ed-cwician to make alive again, quicken, cwic, cuc, &c. quick, living*.

28. And he cwæð: Ge-noh ic hæbbe gif Iosep mín sunu gyt leofað; ic fare and ge-seó hine ær-þám-þe ic swelte<sup>(1)</sup>.

---

VI.—*Exodus*, ch. xxiii.<sup>(2)</sup>

1. Ne under-fóh<sup>(3)</sup> leáse<sup>(4)</sup> ge-witnesse<sup>(5)</sup>.
2. Ne fylig<sup>(6)</sup> þú þám folce þe yfel wille dón, ne be-foran manegon sóðes ne wanda<sup>(7)</sup>.
3. Ne miltsa<sup>(8)</sup> þú þearfan<sup>(9)</sup> on dóme.
4. Gif þú ge-méte þínes feóndes oxan oððe assan, læd hine tó him.
5. Gif þú ge-seó his assan licgan under byrðene<sup>(10)</sup>, ne gá þú þanon, ac hefe hine úp mid him.
6. Ne þú ne wanda on þearfan dóme.
7. Fleóh<sup>(11)</sup> leásunga<sup>(12)</sup>; un-scyldigne and riht-wísne ne of-sléh þú.

(<sup>1</sup>) Sweltan (III. 1.) *to die*.

(<sup>2</sup>) This chapter is imperfect in several places, and the 30th verse is wanting.

(<sup>3</sup>) Under-fangan, -fón (II. 2.) *to undertake, receive*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Leás (I.) *false, lying*. (<sup>5</sup>) *Witness, testimony*. (<sup>6</sup>) See p. 42.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wandian *to fear*, &c. : *shrink not, decline not from the truth through fear*. (<sup>8</sup>) Miltsian *to pity*; from milde. (<sup>9</sup>) Þearf (I.) *poor*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Byrðen (II. 3.) *burthen*; G. *bürde*: from beran.

(<sup>11</sup>) Fleógan, fleón (II. 2.) *to flee, fly*; G. *fliehen, fliegen*.

(<sup>12</sup>) Either sing, or plur. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the oblique cases singular in -a. Leásung *leasing, lying*, from leás.

8. Ne nim þú lác<sup>(1)</sup> þa a-blendað gleáwne<sup>(2)</sup>, and a-wendað<sup>(3)</sup> riht-wísra word.

9. Ne beó þú æl-þeódigum<sup>(4)</sup> gram<sup>(5)</sup>, for-þám ge wáron æl-þeódie on Egipta-lande.

10. Sáw<sup>(6)</sup> six ger<sup>(7)</sup> þín land, and gadera<sup>(8)</sup> his wæstmas,

11. And læt hit restan on þám sefoðan, þæt þearfan eton þær-of, and wild-deór<sup>(9)</sup> : dó swá on þínum wín-earde, and on þínum ele-beámon<sup>(10)</sup>.

12. Wyrce six dagas, and ge-swíc<sup>(11)</sup> on þám sefoðan, þæt þín oxa and þín assa híg ge-reston, and þæt þínre wylne sunu sý ge-hyrt<sup>(12)</sup>, and se útan-cumena<sup>(13)</sup>.

13. Healdað ealle þa þing þe ic eów sæde, and ne swerie ge þurh útan-cumenra goda naman.

14. Þrywa on gere ge-wurðiað<sup>(14)</sup> mínne freols.

15. Þú ytst þeorf-symbel<sup>(15)</sup> ; seofon dagas ge etað

(1) *Gifts*, here neuter II. 1., but see p. 9.

(2) Gleáw (I.) *skilful, clever* ; G. klug.

(3) A-wendan (I. 2.) *to turn away, sub-vert, per-vert* ; G. ab-wenden : the prefix a- sometimes has the force of of-.

(4) Æl-þeódig (II.) *foreign, strange* ; æl- is here = ἄλλο-ς, L. al-ius, alienus ; and not to be confounded with æl for eal, in æl-mihtig, æl-beorht and the like.

(5) *Angry, cruel*. Vulg. "molestus."

(6) Sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow* ; G. sähen.

(7) = gear, see p. 5.

(8) Gaderian *to gather*.

(9) *Wild beasts*.

(10) *Olive-trees* ; ele oil, beám beam, tree ; G. baum, D. boom, whence boom.

(11) Ge-swícan (III. 2.) *to cease*.

(12) Ge-hyrtan (I. 2.) *to encourage, hearten, strengthen*, from heorte.

(13) *Stranger, one come from without* ; út-on, see p. 71.

(14) Ge-weorðian (wurðian) *to honour, celebrate* ; G. würdigen.

(15) *Feast of unleavened bread*.

þeorf, swá ic þe be-beád, on þæs monðes tíð níwra<sup>(1)</sup> wæstma, þá þú út-fóre of Egipta-lande : ne cymst þú bútan ælmyssan<sup>(2)</sup> on míne ge-sýhðe.

16. Heald þá symbel-tíðe þæs monðes frum-sceatta<sup>(3)</sup> þínes weorces þe þú on lande sáwst, and on geres útgeange<sup>(4)</sup>, þonne þú ge-gaderast þíne wæstmas tógædre.

17. Þrywa on gere æle wæpned-man<sup>(5)</sup> æt-ýwð<sup>(6)</sup> beforan Dryhtne<sup>(7)</sup>.

18. Ne offra þú þínre on-sægdnesse blóð<sup>(8)</sup> úppan beorman<sup>(9)</sup>, ne se rysel<sup>(10)</sup> ne be-lýfð<sup>(11)</sup> oð morgen<sup>(12)</sup>.

19. Bring þíne frum-sceattas tó Godes húse.

20. Nú ic sende míne engel þæt he þe læde in-tó þære stówe þe ic ge-gearwode<sup>(13)</sup>.

21. Gým<sup>(14)</sup> his, and ge-hýr his stemne<sup>(15)</sup>, for-þám

(1) Níwe (I.) *new*; νεος, L. novus, G. neu, D. nieuw.

(2) Ælmyss (I. 3.) *alms*; (S. awmous;) *gift* would here have been better.

(3) *First fruits*; fruma *beginning*, sceat (II. 2.) *coin, value, profit, &c.* hence *shot, scot*: G. schatz *treasure*.

(4) Ut-gang (II. 2.) *out-going, end*; G. aus-gang.

(5) Lit. *weaponed-man*; the common use of this word for *male* is a strong proof of the warlike habits of our A. S. forefathers.

(6) Æt-ýwan (-ian, -eówian) (I. 2.) *to appear, show, &c.*

(7) Dryhten (II. 2.) *Lord, chief*; dryht (II. 3.) *troop, band*.

(8) Blóð (II. 1.) *blood*; G. blut, D. bloed.

(9) Beorme (I. 3.) *barm, leaven, leavened bread*. (10) II. 2. *fat*.

(11) Be-lýfan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.

(12) Morgen, mergen, merigen (II. 2.) *morn, morrow*; G. and D. morgen.

(13) Gearwian *to prepare, make yare or ready*.

(14) Gým (I. 2.) *to take care of, care for, herd, attend to*.

(15) Stemn = stefn *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

he ne for-gifð þonne ge syngiað, and mín nama is on him.

22. Ic beó þínra feónða feónd,

23. And þe in ge-læde tó Amorrea lande.

24. Ne ge-eað-méd<sup>(1)</sup> þú hira godas, ac to-brec hira an-lícnessa.

25. þeówiað Dryhtne : ic ge-bletsie eów, and dó ælce un-trumnesse fram eów,

26. And ge-íce<sup>(2)</sup> eówer dagas,

27. And a-flýme<sup>(3)</sup> þíne fýnd be-foran þe ;

28. And ic a-sende hyrnetta<sup>(4)</sup>, þe aflýmað Efeum<sup>(5)</sup> and Chananeum,

29. Twelf monðum ær þú in-fare.

\* \* \* \* \*

31. Ic sette þíne ge-mæro<sup>(6)</sup> fram þære Reádan<sup>(7)</sup> Sáe oð Palastinas Sáe, and fram þám wéstene oð þæt flód.

32. Nafa þú náne sibbe<sup>(8)</sup> wið hira godas,

33. þý-læs híg þe be-swícon<sup>(9)</sup>.

(1) Eáð-médan (eád-) (I. 2.) *to humble one-self, worship, "bow down to:"* from eáð and mód.

(2) Ge-ícan (I. 2.) *to increase, lengthen, eke out ;* from eác.

(3) A-flýman (I. 2.) *to put to flight, from fleám flight.*

(4) Hyrnet hornet.

(5) *The Hivite ;* Vulg. "Hevæum."

(6) Ge-mære (III. 1.) *boundary ;* P. *meer.*

(7) Reád (I.) *red ;* G. *roth, D. rood.*

(8) Sib (II. 3.) *peace.*

(9) Be-swícan (III. 2.) *to deceive.*

VII.—*Saxon Chronicle* (1).

\* \* The Saxon Chronicle is a series of annals of A. S. affairs, from the earliest times to A.D. 1154, compiled by Monks.

Brytene (2) ig-land (3) is eahta hund mila lang and twá hund mila brád; and her syndon on þám ig-lande fíf ge-þeóda (4), Englisc, and Bryt-Wylisc (5), and Scyttisc (6), and Pyhtisc (7), and Bóc-leden (8). Æ'rost wæron búgend (9) þisses landes Bryttas (10) þa comon of Armo-rica (11), and ge-sæton (12) súðan-weard Brytene ærost.

A.D. 449. Her (13) Martianus and Valentinianus on-fengon ríce (14), and rícsodon seofon winter. On heora dagum Hengest (15) and Horsa fram Wyrhtgeorne (16) ge-laðode (17) Brytta cyninge tó fultume, ge-sóhton (18) Brytene on þám stede (19) þe is ge-nemned Yp-wines-fleót (20), ærost Bryttum tó fultume, ac hí eft (21) on hí (22)

(1) Taken with some slight changes from the edition of Dr. Ingram, President of Trinity College, Oxford.

(2) II. 2. *Britain*.

(3) Ig-land, ea-land, (II. 1.) e, *iland*; G. ei-land, D. ey-land: *island* has arisen from a confusion with *isle*, (L. *insula*, G. *insel*, F. *isle*, *île*) with which it has no connexion.

(4) Ge-þeód (II. 3.) *nation*.

(5) Lit. *British-Welsh*.

(6) *Scottish*.

(7) *Pictish*.

(8) *Book-Latin, Roman*.

(9) For búend (II. 2.) *inhabitants*: see p. 15.

(10) Brytte (II. 2.) *Briton*. (11) A various reading has *Armenia*.

(12) Ge-sittan (II. 1.) *to occupy, settle in*.

(13) Here and below means *this year*. (14) *The Roman Empire*.

(15) II. 2. Not *Hengist* as commonly spelt; *horse*, G. *hengst*. Horsa too meant the same. (16) *Vortigern*. (17) *Laðian* (I. 1.) *to invite*, G. *laden*.

(18) Sécan is here *to go to*; comp. the use of L. *petere*.

(19) II. 2. *Place, stead*; G. *statt, stätte*.

(20) *Ebb's-et* in the Isle of Thanet; fleót *stream, creek*; *fleet* is common in locname.asl

(21) *Again, afterwards*.

(22) *Against them*; in eo

fuhton. Se cing hét hí feohtan on-gear Pyhtas, and hí swá dydon, and sige<sup>(1)</sup> hæfdon swá-hwar-swá hí comon. Hí þá sendon tó Angle<sup>(2)</sup> and héton heom sendan máre fultum, and heom secgan Bryt-Walena<sup>(3)</sup> náhtnesse<sup>(4)</sup>, and þæs landes cysta<sup>(5)</sup>. Hí þá sendon heom máre fultum: þá comon þa men of þrym mægðum Germanie<sup>(6)</sup>:—of Eald-Seaxum<sup>(7)</sup>, of Englum<sup>(8)</sup>, of Iótum<sup>(9)</sup>. Of Iótum comon Cant-ware<sup>(10)</sup>, and Wiht-ware, þæt is seó mæð<sup>(11)</sup> þe nú eardað<sup>(12)</sup> on Wiht<sup>(13)</sup>, and þæt cyn on West-Seaxum<sup>(14)</sup> þe man git hæt Iótena-cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum comon Eást-Seaxan<sup>(15)</sup>, and Súd-Seaxan<sup>(16)</sup>, and West-Seaxan. Of

(1) II. 2. *victory*; G. *sieg*.

(2) Engle, Angle (Ongle) (II. 2.) *country of the Angles*, the present Sleswig.

(3) Bryt-Wala (I. 2.) lit. *British-Welshman*: the Anglo-Saxons called all not of Gothic race Walan or Wealas, equivalent to *strangers* or *foreigners*, and the Germans still keep up the same idea, calling the French and Italians *Wälschen*, and anything strange or outlandish *wälsch*.

(4) Náhtnes (II. 3.) *goodness for nought, cowardice*.

(5) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence*; pl. cysta *good things, abundance*.

(6) Gen. of Germania; see p. 13.

(7) Seaxa (I. 2.) *Saxon*: the Old-Saxon dialect nearly resembled the A. S.

(8) See p. 19.

(9) Ióta, Iúta (I. 2); the Jutes occupied the present Jutland, which was bounded to the south by Angle; the Old-Saxons' land, now Holstein, lay still further southward.

(10) *Dwellers in Kent*: see p. 20.

(11) = mægð, p. 5.

(12) *Eardian to dwell*, from eard.

(13) Or Wiht-land *Isle of Wight*.

(14) The West-Saxons occupied Berks, Hants, Wilts, Dorset, and parts of Somerset and Devon.

(15) The East-Saxons occupied Essex, as the name implies, Middlesex, and part of Herts.

(16) The South-Saxons had Sussex, named after them, and Surrey.



Angle comon (se á síð-þán stód wéstig<sup>(1)</sup> be-twyx Iótum and Seaxum) Eást-Engle<sup>(2)</sup>, Middel-Engle<sup>(3)</sup>, Mearce<sup>(4)</sup>, and ealle Nord-Ymbra<sup>(5)</sup>. \* \* \*

A.D. 596. Her Gregorius Papa sende tó Brytene Augustinum, mid wel monegum<sup>(6)</sup> munucum<sup>(7)</sup> þa Godes word sceoldon bodian<sup>(8)</sup> Angel-cynne. \* \*

A.D. 806. Her se mona a-þýstrode<sup>(9)</sup> on kalendis Septembris<sup>(10)</sup>. Eád-wulf Nordan-Hymbra cyning wæs of his ríce a-drifen, and Heard-byrht bisceop on Hagustealdes-e<sup>(11)</sup> forð-ferde<sup>(12)</sup>. Eác on þissum ylcan geare pridie nonas Iunii<sup>(13)</sup> róde-tácen<sup>(14)</sup> weard at-eówed<sup>(15)</sup> on þám monan, ánes Wódnnes-dægés<sup>(16)</sup>,

(1) *Waste, desert.*

(2) East Anglia comprised Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge.

(3) The Middle Angles had Salop, Worcester, Warwick, Gloucester, &c.

(4) Mercia included the remaining midland counties, together with Chester, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln.

(5) Northumbria consisted of York, Lancaster, and the other northern counties: as these were united or divided into two kingdoms, Saxon England formed either a heptarchy or an octarchy.

(6) *Very many, a good number.*

(7) Munuc (II. 2.) *monk*; G. *mönch*, L. *monachus*.

(8) *To announce, proclaim, preach*; hence *to bode*: *boda messenger*; G. *bote*, D. *boode*.

(9) A-þýstrian *to become dark, be eclipsed*, from þýstru (p. 10.); þýster *dark*; G. *düster*.

(10) *Sept. 1.*: the Roman name for the day of the month was used sometimes, but not always: see p. 36.

(11) *Hexham.*

(12) *Went forth, departed, died.*

(13) *June 4.*

(14) *Sign of the Cross*; ród (II. 3.) *rood, Cross*; tácen *token, sign*; G. *zeichen*, D. *teeken*.

(15) *At-* for *æt-*; see p. 4.

(16) "*Of a Wednesday*," as we still say.

innan þære daginge<sup>(1)</sup>; and eft on þissum geare tertio kalendas Septembris<sup>(2)</sup> án wundor-lic trendel<sup>(3)</sup> weard̄ at-eowed a-bútan þære sunnan. \* \*

And þý ylcan geare (A.D. 853.) sende Æðel-wulf cyning Ælf-red his sunu tó Rome, (þá wæs þonne Leo<sup>(4)</sup> Papa on Rome) and he hine tó cyninge gehálgode, and hine him tó bisceop-suna ge-nam<sup>(5)</sup>. \*

A.D. 871. þá feng Ælf-red Æðel-wulf-ing<sup>(6)</sup> tó<sup>(7)</sup> West-Seaxna ríce; and þæs ymb ænne monað<sup>(8)</sup> gefeht Ælf-red cyning wið ealne þone here<sup>(9)</sup> lytle werode<sup>(10)</sup> æt Wil-túne<sup>(11)</sup> and hine lange on dæg geflýmde<sup>(12)</sup>, and þa Deniscan áhton wæl-stówe<sup>(13)</sup> ge-weald. And þæs geares wurdon nigon folc-gefeht<sup>(14)</sup> ge-fohten wið þone here on þám cyne-ríce be súðan Temese, bútan þám þe him Ælf-red, and ealdor-men<sup>(15)</sup>, and cyninges þegnas oft ráda<sup>(16)</sup> on-ridon þe man ná ne rímde<sup>(17)</sup>. And þæs geares

(1) Daging (see p. 67.) *dawn*; dagian *to dawn*, O. *daw*.

(2) Aug. 29.

(3) *Round, circle*: hence *to trundle*.

(4) Leo IV.

(5) *Stood sponsor to him at Confirmation*; an ancient custom of the Churches; see the 3rd rubric after Confirmation, and thereon Wheatley, &c.

(6) *Son of Æthelwulf*; see p. 65.

(7) Feng tó “*took to*,” as is still said.

(8) *One month after that*.

(9) The Danish host of plunderers was called emphatically “*se here*” *the army*; G. *das heer*: see p. 9.

(10) Abl. *with a little band*: werod II. 1.

(11) Wil-tún *Wilton*.

(12) Ge-flýman = a-flýman above.

(13) Wæl-stów *slaughter-place, battle-field*; G. *wahl-platz*.

(14) *Great battles, battles of nations*.

(15) Ealdor-man (III. 2.) *senator, chief*; hence *alderman*.

(16) Rád (II. 3.) *road, in-road, raid, foray*; from rídan.

(17) Ríman *to count, number*: hence *to rime*; G. *reimen*, D. *rijmen*.

wáeron of-slegene nigon eorlas (1), and án cyning; and þý geare namon West-seaxan frið (2) wið þone here.

A.D. 901. Her forð-ferde Ælf-red Æðel-wulfing six nihtum (3) áer Ealra Háligra Mæssan (4), se wæs cyning ofer eal Angel-cyn bútan þám dæle þe under Dena on-wealde wæs. And he heóld þæt ríce óðer-healf (5) gear læs þe þryttig wintra (6).

---

### VIII.—*Apollonius.* (7)

\* \* \* Translated from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a monkish collection of tales, by whom is not known. This story is the original of the play called “*Pericles Prince of Tyre.*”

---

Sóð-lice mid-þý-þe þæs cynges dóhtor ge-seáh þæt Apollonius on eallum góðum cræftum swá wel wæs ge-togen (8), þá ge-feoll hyre mód on his lufe. þá æfter þæs beórscipes (9) ge-endunge, cwæð þæt

(1) Eorl *earl*.

(2) Namon frið *made peace*: frið (II. 2.) *peace*; G. *friede*.

(3) The Anglo-Saxons reckoned time by *nights*: of this our *se'n-night* (seven-night) and *fo'rt'night* (fourteen-night) are relics.

(4) *All Hallows' Mass, Feast of All Saints*: *mæsse* I. 3.

(5) See p. 36.

(6) See p. 35, note 5.

(7) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, pp. 17—19, 23—25.

(8) Teógan, (túgan), teón *to draw &c., educate*: comp. G. *er-ziehen*; L. *e-ducare* from *ducere*.

(9) Beór-scipe (II. 2.) *feast, banquet*; beór (II. 1.) *beer*.

mæden tó þám cyngre: Leófa fæder, þú lýfdest me lytle ár þæt ic móste gifan Apollonio swá-hwæt-swá ic wolde of þínum gold-horde<sup>(1)</sup>. Arces-trates se cyng cwæð tó hyre: Gif him swá-hwæt-swá þú wile. Heó þá swíðe<sup>(2)</sup> blíðe<sup>(3)</sup> út-eóde and cwæð: Láraow Apolloni, ic gife þe be mínes fæder leáfe twá hund punda<sup>(4)</sup> goldes, and feower hund punda ge-wihte<sup>(5)</sup> seolfres, and þone mástan dæl<sup>(6)</sup> deór-wyrðan<sup>(7)</sup> reáfes, and twentig þeówa manna. And heó þá þus cwæð tó þám þeówum mannum: Berað þás þing mid eów þe ic be-hét<sup>(8)</sup> Apollonio mínum láreowe, and leogað innon búre<sup>(9)</sup> be-foran mínum freóndum. Þis weard þá þus ge-dón æfter þære cwene<sup>(10)</sup> háse<sup>(11)</sup>, and ealle þa men hyre gife heredon þe híg ge-sáwon. Þá sóð-lice ge-endode se ge-beórscipe, and þa men ealle a-rison, and grétton þone cyng and þá cwene, and bádon híg ge-sunde<sup>(12)</sup> beón and hám ge-wendon. Eác-swylce<sup>(13)</sup> Apollonius

(1) Hord (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure.*

(2) Swíð (I.) *strong, powerful*; swíðe *greatly, very*; comp. L. (*valide*) valde, F. fort.

(3) Blíðe *blithe*; D. blijde.

(4) Pund (II. 1.) *pound.*

(5) Ge-wiht (II. 3.) *weight*; G. ge-wicht.

(6) *A very great deal.*

(7) *Precious*; deór *dear*; G. theuer, D. duur.

(8) Be-hátan (II. 2.) *to promise*; G. ver-heissen.

(9) Búr (II. 2.) *chamber, bower.*

(10) Cwen (II. 3.) *queen*; *quean* is likewise from *cwen*, which meant originally *woman*; γυνή.

(11) Háse (II. 3.) *command, be-hest*; G. ge-heiss.

(12) Ge-sund *sound, whole*; *bade them fare-well*; L. *valere eos jussurunt.*

(13) *So in like manner.*

cwæð: þú góða cyning and earmra ge-miltsigend, and þú cwen láre lufigend, beó ge ge-sunde. He be-seáh<sup>(1)</sup> eác tó þám þeówum mannum þe þæt mæden him for-gifen<sup>(2)</sup> hæfde, and heom cwæð tó: Nimað þás þing mid eów þe me seó cwen for-geaf, and gán we sécan úre gæst-hús<sup>(3)</sup> þæt we magon ús ge-restan.

þá a-dred þæt mæden þæt heó næfre eft Apollonium ne ge-sáwe swá hraðe swá heó wolde, and eóde þá tó hyre fæder and cwæð: þú góða cyning, lícað þe wel þæt Apollonius þe þurh ús tó-dæg ge-góðod<sup>(4)</sup> is, þus heonon fare, and cuman yfele men and be-reáfian hine? Se cyng cwæð: Wel þú cwáede: hát him findan hwar he hine mæge wurd-licost<sup>(5)</sup> ge-restan. þá dyde þæt mæden swá hyre be-boden wæs, and Apollonius on-feng þære wununge<sup>(6)</sup> þe him be-táht<sup>(7)</sup> wæs, and þar-in-eóde, Gode þancigende þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces wurdscipes and frófre.

Ac þæt mæden hæfde un-stille niht mid þære lufe on-áled<sup>(8)</sup> þára worda and sanga þe heó ge-hýrde æt Apollonige<sup>(9)</sup>, and ná leng heó ne ge-bád þonne hit dæg was, ac eóde sona swá hit leóht<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, and

(1) Be-seón (III. 3.) *to look, look at.*

(2) For-gifan (II. 1.) *to give away, present, forgive.*

(3) *Inn, guest-house*; G. *gast-haus.*

(4) Ge-góðian, *to endow, enrich*; G. *be-gütern.*

(5) Wurð-lic (II.) *honourable.* (6) *Dwelling, habitation*; G. *wohnung.*

(7) Be-tácan (I. 2.) *to commit, assign*; hence *betake.*

(8) On-álan (I. 2.) *to inflame.*

(9) Abl. or dat. formed A. S.-wise from Apollonius; the g inserted as p. 41.

(10) *Light*; G. *licht.*

ge-sæt be-foran hyre fæder bedde. Þá cwæð se cyng :  
 Leófe dóhtor, for-hwý eart þú þus ár-wacol<sup>(1)</sup>? Þæt  
 mæden cwæð: Me a-wehton<sup>(2)</sup> þa ge-cneordnessa<sup>(3)</sup>  
 þe ic girstan-dæg<sup>(4)</sup> ge-hýrde; nú bidde ic þe for-  
 þám þæt þú be-fæste<sup>(5)</sup> me úrum cuman Apollonige  
 tó láre<sup>(6)</sup>. Þá weard se cyng þearle<sup>(7)</sup> ge-blissod<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 and hét feccan Apollonium and him tó cwæð: Mín  
 dóhtor gyrnd þæt heó móte leornian æt þe þa ge-  
 sáligan<sup>(9)</sup> láre þe þú canst, and gif þú wilt þisum  
 oingum ge-hýrsum beón, ic swerige þe þurh mínes  
 síces mæгна<sup>(10)</sup> þæt swá-hwæt-swá þú on sáe for-lure,  
 ic þe þæt on land ge-staðelige<sup>(11)</sup>. Þá-þá Apollonius  
 þæt ge-hýrde, he on-feng þám mædenne tó láre, and  
 hyre tæhte swá wel swá he sylf ge-leornode.

\* \* \* \* \*

Þá wæs hyre ge-cýd þe þar ealdor<sup>(12)</sup> wæs, þæt þar  
 wære cumen sum cyngc<sup>(13)</sup> mid his aðume<sup>(14)</sup>, and  
 mid his dóhtor, mid miclum gifum. Mid-þám-þe heó

(1) *Early-wakeful*; comp. L. vigil.

(2) A-weccan (I. 2.) *to awake* (act.) G. er-wecken: the neut. is wacian (I. 1.) or wacan (II. 3.); G. wachen. (3) *Studies, accomplishments.*

(4) *Yesterday*; G. gestern; comp. L. hestern-us.

(5) Be-fæstan (I. 2.) *to commit, intrust.* (6) *For instruction.*

(7) Pearl (I.) *strong*; þearle *very, greatly*; comp. swíðe above.

(8) Blissian *to rejoice*; bliss (II. 3.) *bliss, joy.*

(9) Ge-sálig (I.) *happy, blessed*; G. selig: hence *silly, O. sely.*

(10) Mæгна (III. 1.) *power.*

(11) Ge-staðelian *to establish, make good*, from staðol *station*; whence staðol-fæst *stead-fast, &c.*

(12) Here used for *chief priestess.*

(13) See p. 5.

(14) Aðum *son-in-law.*

þæt ge-hýrde, heó hí sylfe mid cyne-licum reáfe ge-frætwoðe<sup>(1)</sup>, and mid purpran ge-scrýdde, and hyre heáfod mid golde and mid gimmon<sup>(2)</sup> ge-glengde<sup>(3)</sup>, and mid miclum fæmnena<sup>(4)</sup> heápe<sup>(5)</sup> ymb-trymm-ed<sup>(6)</sup>, com tó-geanes þám cynge<sup>(7)</sup>. Heó wæs sóðlice þearle wlitig<sup>(8)</sup>, and for þære<sup>(9)</sup> miclan lufe þære clænnesse hí sædon ealle þæt þar nære nán Dianan<sup>(10)</sup> swá ge-cweme<sup>(11)</sup> swá heó.

Mid-þám-þe Apollonius þæt ge-seáh, he mid his aðume, and mid his dóhtor tó hyre urnon, and feollon ealle tó hyre fótum, and wéndon þæt heó Diana wære seó gyden<sup>(12)</sup> for hyre miclan beorhtnesse and wlite. Þæt háli<sup>(13)</sup> ern<sup>(14)</sup> wearð þá ge-openod, and þa lác wæron in-ge-bróhte; and Apollonius on-gan þá spreca and cweda: Ic fram cild-háde wæs Apollonius ge-nemned, on Tirum ge-boren. Mid-þám-þe

(1) Ge-frætwan to adorn; frætu (III. 1.) ornament, fret.

(2) Gim (II. 2.) gem. (3) Ge-glengan (I. 2.) to adorn.

(4) Fæmne damsel; L. femina.

(5) Heáp (II. 2.) troop, heap; G. haufe, D. hoop.

(6) Ymb-trymmian to surround, trymmian to strengthen, hence to trim, guard, a garment, &c.

(7) To meet the king; comp. G. dem könige ent-gegen.

(8) Beautiful; wlite (II. 2.) beauty.

(9) = þære; at p. 5, l. 1, it should have been stated that á is sometimes changed to á, as well á to á. (10) Dat. of Diana.

(11) Pleasing, agreeable, from cwuman (cuman) to come; comp. G. be-quem con-venient.

(12) Feminine of god; see p. 66, and comp. G. gott, gött-in.

(13) = hálig, see p. 5.

(14) Ern, ærn (II. 1.) house, room; see p. 71, n. 7.

ic be-com tó fullon and-gite<sup>(1)</sup> þá næs nán cræft þe wære fram cyngum be-gán<sup>(2)</sup> oððe fram æðelum mannum þæt ic ne cúðe: ic a-rædde<sup>(3)</sup> Antiochus rædels<sup>(4)</sup> þæs cynges tó-þón-þæt ic his dóhtor underfenge me tó ge-mæccan, ac he sylfa wæs mid þám fúlestan horwe<sup>(5)</sup> þar-tó ge-þeód<sup>(6)</sup>, and me þá syrwoðe<sup>(7)</sup> tó of-sleánne. Mid-þám-þe ic þæt forfleáh<sup>(8)</sup>, þá weard ic on sáe for-liden<sup>(9)</sup>, and com tó Cyrenense<sup>(10)</sup>. Þá underfengc me Arcestrates se cyngc mid swá micelre lufe, þæt ic æt nyhstan<sup>(11)</sup> ge-earnode<sup>(12)</sup> þæt he geaf me his á-cennedan<sup>(13)</sup> dóhtor tó ge-mæccan. Seó fór þá mid me tó onfónne mínon cyne-ríce, and þás míne dóhtor þe ic be-foran þe, Diana, ge-and-weard<sup>(14)</sup> hæbbe, a-cende on sáe, and hyre gást a-let<sup>(15)</sup>. Ic þá hí mid cyne-licum réafe ge-scrýdde, and mid golde and ge-write<sup>(16)</sup> on ciste<sup>(17)</sup> a-legde<sup>(18)</sup>, þæt se-þe hí funde hí wurð-lice

(1) And-git (II. 1.) *understanding*.

(2) Be-gán *to exercise, cultivate, attend to*.

(3) A-rædan *to read, guess*; G. er-rathen *to guess*.

(4) II. 2. *riddle*; G. räthsel.

(5) Horu (III. 1.) *pollution*.

(6) Ge-þeóðan (I. 2.) *to join*.

(7) Syrwoðan *to plot*; searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(8) For-fleón *to escape, flee from*.

(9) Shipwrecked; líðan (III. 2.) *to sail, for-líðan to sail with ill success, suffer shipwreck*.

(10) Cyrene.

(11) *At last*.

(12) *Earned, deserved, obtained*.

(13) A'-cenned = án-cenned *only begotten*.

(14) *Present*.

(15) A-lætan = of-lætan *to let forth, give up*.

(16) Ge-writ (III. 1.) *writing, writ, inscription*.

(17) Cist (II. 3.) *chest, coffin*; P. kist, G. kiste.

(18) Usually -lede; from -leggan.



be-byrigde<sup>(1)</sup>, and þás míne dóhtor be-fæste þám mán-fullestan<sup>(2)</sup> mannan to féðanne<sup>(3)</sup>. Fór me<sup>(4)</sup> þá tó Egipta-lande feower-tyne gear on heófe<sup>(5)</sup>: þá ic on-gean<sup>(6)</sup> com, þá sædon hí me þæt mín dóhtor wære forð-faren<sup>(7)</sup>; and me wæs mín sár<sup>(8)</sup> eal ge-ed-níwad.

Mid-þám-þe he þás þinge eal a-reht hæfde, Arcestrate sóð-lice his wíf úp-a-rás, and hine ymb-clypte<sup>(9)</sup>. þá niste ná Apollonius ne ne ge-lýfde þæt heó his ge-mæcca<sup>(10)</sup> wære, ac sceáf<sup>(11)</sup> hí fram him. Heó þá micelre stefne clypode, and cwæð mid wópe: Ic eom Arcestrate þín ge-mæcca, Arcestrates dóhtor þæs cynges, and þú eart Apollonius mín láreow þe me lærdest! þú eart se for-lidena man þe ic lufode, ná for gálnesse<sup>(12)</sup> ac for wís-dóme! Hwar is mín dóhtor? He be-wende hine þá tó Thasian<sup>(13)</sup> and cwæð: þis heó is; and híg weópon þá ealle, and eác blissodon. And þæt word sprang geond eal þæt land þæt Apollonius se máera cyngc hæfde funden his wíf; and þá weard or-mæte<sup>(14)</sup> bliss, and þa or-

(1) (Be-) byrigan to bury.

(2) Mán-full *wicked*; mán (II. 1.) *wickedness, sin, crime*; mán-swara a man-sworn, perjured man; G. mein-eid, false oath.

(3) To feed, nourish, bring up.

(4) See p. 81.

(5) Heáf, heóf (II. 2.) *sigh, groan, grief*.

(6) *Again, back again*.

(7) Forð-faran = forð-feran.

(8) *Pain, grief, sore*.

(9) Ymb-clyppan to embrace, clip round.

(10) Ge-mæcca mate serves for both genders; thus correct n. 9, p. 111.

(11) Scúfan (III. 3.) to shove, push; G. schieben, D. schuiven.

(12) *Lust*.

(13) The A. S. dative, like Dianan above and Antiochian below.

(14) *Measureless, immense*; from or- and metan to mete, measure; see Additions, &c.

gana<sup>(1)</sup> wæron ge-togene<sup>(2)</sup>, and þa býman<sup>(3)</sup> ge-bláwene<sup>(4)</sup>, and þar weardþ blíðe ge-beórscipe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cyngre and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran<sup>(5)</sup> þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þære mægðe on Efe-sum, heó fór mid hyre were<sup>(6)</sup>, and mid hyre ađume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ríce ge-healden<sup>(7)</sup>. Fór<sup>(8)</sup> þá síð-þán tó Tirum<sup>(9)</sup> and ge-sette þar Athenagoras his ađum tó cyngre; fór þá sóð-lice þanon tó Tharsum mid his wífe, and mid his dóhtor, and mid cyne-licre fyrde<sup>(10)</sup>, and hét sona ge-læccan<sup>(11)</sup> Stranguilionem and Dionisiaden, and lédan be-foran him þar he sæt on his þrym-setle<sup>(12)</sup>.

(1) L. organum, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(2) Lit. *drawn*; from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows.

(3) Býme *trumpet*.

(4) Bláwan (II. 2.) *to blow*; G. blähen.

(5) Gyngre (*female*) *disciple, follower*, lit. *younger*; G. jünger is used in the same sense.

(6) Wer (fir) II. 2. *man, husband*; L. vir; aior was the Scythian (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(7) *Had been kept for A.*

(8) *He, Apollonius went.*

(9) Copied probably from the L. "(ad) Tyrum" (as also Tharsum below); tó seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(10) Fyrd (II. 3.) *army, array, march, &c.*; G. fahrt *journey, &c.*

(11) I. 2. *to seize, catch.*

(12) *Glory-seat, throne*; þrym II. 2., setl III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius*. Cap. xvii. (1)

\* \* King Ælfred translated Boëthius de Consolatione Philosophiæ, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

Hú þæt Mórd<sup>(2)</sup> sæde þæt him næfre seó mægð and seó gitsung<sup>(3)</sup> for-wel<sup>(4)</sup> ne lícode<sup>(5)</sup>, bútan tó láde<sup>(6)</sup> he tilade (7).

þá se Wís-dóm þá þis leóð<sup>(8)</sup> a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swígode<sup>(9)</sup> he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mórd and þus cwæð: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes<sup>(10)</sup>! hwæt<sup>(11)</sup> þú wást þæt me næfre seó gitsung and seó ge-mægð þisses eorð-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne lícode, ne ic ealles for-swíðe ne gyrnde þisses eorð-lícan ríces. Búton lá ic wilnode þeáh and-weorces<sup>(12)</sup> tó þám weorce

(1) From Mr. Cardale's edition, slightly altered.

(2) II. 1. neuter, while G. muth is masculine: another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9.

(3) II. 3. *desire, covetousness*; gitsian *to covet*.

(4) *Very well, too well*; for- is sometimes intensive; for-nean *well nigh*, for-swíðe *too much, excessively*.

(5) See p. 86.

(6) *Unwillingly*; see p. 70: láð (1.) *hateful, loathsome*.

(7) Tilian (teolian) *to toil, till, &c.*: see p. 42.

(8) III. 1. *song, lay*; G. lied.

(9) Swígian *to be silent*; G. schweigen.

(10) *Reason, discretion*; sceadan (p. 54.) *to divide, discriminate, &c.*; G. scheiden.

(11) Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.

(12) And-weorc (II. 1.) *matter, material, substance*.

þe me be-boden wæs tó wyrcanne; þæt wæs þæt ic un-fracod-líce<sup>(1)</sup> and ge-rísen-líce<sup>(2)</sup> mihte steór-an<sup>(3)</sup> and reccan<sup>(4)</sup> þone an-weald þe me be-fæst wæs. Hwæt þú wást þæt nán mon ne mæg nánne cræft cýðan<sup>(5)</sup>, ne nánne an-weald reccan ne steór-an, búton tólum<sup>(6)</sup> and and-weorce: þæt býð ælces cræftes and-weorc, þæt mon þone cræft búton<sup>(7)</sup> wyrcan ne mæg. Þæt býð þonne cyninges and-weorc and his tól mid tó rícsianne<sup>(8)</sup>, þæt he hæbbe his land ful-mannod<sup>(9)</sup>: he sceal hæbban ge-bed-men<sup>(10)</sup>, and fyrd-men<sup>(11)</sup>, and weorc-men. Hwæt þú wást þætte bútan þissum tólum nán cyning his cræft ne mæg cýðan. Þæt is eác his and-weorc þæt he hæbban sceal tó þám tólum, þám þrym ge-fer-scipum<sup>(12)</sup> bi-wiste<sup>(13)</sup>; þæt is þonne heora bi-wist, land tó búgienne<sup>(14)</sup>, and gifta<sup>(15)</sup>, and wæpna<sup>(16)</sup>, and mete, and ealo<sup>(17)</sup>, and cláðas<sup>(18)</sup>, and ge-hwæt

(1) Fracod (I.) *vile, shameful.*

(2) Ge-rísen-líc (II.) *fit, proper*; hit ge-ríst *it is fit, becoming*, = L. decet.

(3) Or stýran (I. 2.) *to steer, guide, govern*; G. steuern, D. sturen.

(4) I. 3. *reckon for, give an account of.*

(5) *To make known, show forth, practise.*

(6) Tól (II. 1.) *tool.*

(7) Þæt—búton *without which.*

(8) *To rule with*: rícsian, (rícian); L. reg-ere, rex-i.

(9) Mannian *to man.*

(10) *Prayer-men, clergy.*

(11) *Army-men, soldiers.*

(12) Ge-fer-scipe (II. 2.) *company*; ge-fera *companion*, O. fere.

(13) Bi-wist (II. 3.) *provision, food*: wist *feast, &c.*

(14) Búgian = búan.

(15) Gift (II. 3.) *gift*; plur. gifta usually means *marriage.*

(16) Wæpen (III. 1.) *weapon*; D. wapen.

(17) Ealo (-u) (III. 3. *ale.*

(18) Cláð (II. 2.) *cloth, garment*; G. kleid.

þæs þe þa þreo ge-fercipas be-hófiad̄: ne mæg he bútan þissum þás tól ge-healdan, ne bútan þissum tólum nán þára þinga wyrcean þe him be-boden is tó wyrceanne. For-þý ic wilnode and-weorces þone an-weald mid tó ge-reccenne, þæt míne cræftas and an-weald ne wurden for-gitene and for-holene<sup>(1)</sup>; for-þám ælc cræft and ælc an-weald býð sona for-ealdod<sup>(2)</sup> and for-swígod<sup>(3)</sup>, gif he býð bútan Wís-dóme; for-þám-þe hwæt-swá<sup>(4)</sup> þurh dysige<sup>(5)</sup> ge-dón býð, ne mæg hit nán mon næfre tó cræfte ge-reccan. Þæt is nú hraðost tó secganne þæt ic wilnode weorð-ful-líce<sup>(6)</sup> tó lybbanne þá-hwíle-þe ic lyfode, and æfter mínum life þám monnum tó láfanne þe æfter me wáeren mín ge-mynd<sup>(7)</sup> on gódum weorcum.

---

Cap. xxxiv. 10.

\*.\* A free translation of part of prosa ii. lib. III.

þá cwæð ic: Ne mæg ic náne cwice wuht on-gitan þára þe wíte<sup>(8)</sup> hwæt hit<sup>(9)</sup> wille oððe hwæt hit nille, þe un-ge-néd<sup>(10)</sup> lyste for-weorðan. For-þám ælc wuht wolde beón hál and lybban þára þe me cwice

(1) For-helan (II. 2.) *to hide*; G. ver-hehlen.

(2) For-ealdian *to wear out, perish from old age*.

(3) For-swígian *to pass in silence*; G. ver-schweigen; here and above mark the force of for-.

(4) Usually *swá-hwæt-swá*.

(5) *Folly*; dysig *foolish, absurd*; hence *dizzy*.

(6) *Worthily, honorably*.

(7) II. 1. *memory, mind*.

(8) Wíte singular agreeing with wuht and not with þára þe; see p. 78.

(9) Hit neut. while wuht is fem.

(10) Nédan=*nýdan*.

þincð, bútan ic nát he treówum, and be wyrtum<sup>(1)</sup>, and be swylcum ge-sceaftum<sup>(2)</sup> swylce<sup>(3)</sup> náne sawle nabbað. Þá smearcode<sup>(4)</sup> he and cwæð: Ne þearft þú nó<sup>(5)</sup> be þæm<sup>(6)</sup> ge-sceaftum tweógan<sup>(7)</sup>, þe má þe<sup>(8)</sup> be þæm óðrum. Hú ne miht þú ge-seón þæt ælc wyrt and ælc wudu<sup>(9)</sup> wile weaxan on þám lande sélost<sup>(10)</sup> þe him betst ge-ríst, and him gecynde<sup>(11)</sup> býð and ge-wune-líc<sup>(12)</sup>, and þær þær hit ge-fret<sup>(13)</sup>, þæt hit hraðost weaxan mæg, and latost wealcwigan<sup>(14)</sup>? Sumra wyrta oððe sumes wuda eard býð on dúnnum<sup>(15)</sup>, sumra on merscum<sup>(16)</sup>, sumra on mórnum<sup>(17)</sup>, sumra on cludum<sup>(18)</sup>, sumra on barum<sup>(19)</sup> sondum<sup>(20)</sup>. Nim þonne swá wudu swa

(1) Wyrte (II. 3.) *herb, wort*.

(2) Ge-sceaft (II. 3.) *creatic, creature*.

(3) Swylc—swylc answers to L. talis—qualis.

(4) Smearcian to *smirk, smile*.

(5) Nó=ná.

(6) See p. 30.

(7) Tweógan, tweón (III. 3. See p. 60.) to *doubt*, from twá; comp. *δοια-ζειν*, L. *du-bitare*, G. *zwei-feln*, from *δοια* (*δυο*), duo, zwei.

(8) *Any more than*.

(9) III. 2. *wood*; D. *woud*.

(10) *Best*: *sél good, excellent*.

(11) *Kind, kindly, natural*: *ge-cynd* (II. 3.) *nature, kind*.

(12) *Common, usual*; G. *ge-wöhnlich*.

(13) *Where it takes root, draws nourishment*, lit. *bites*: *fretan* (II. 1.) (G. *fressen*) to *eat, devour, fret*.

(14) *Fade*; G. *ver-welken*, P. *welk*.

(15) *Dún* (II. 3.) *down, hill, mountain*; hence *don* in local names: G. *düne*, D. *duin*, F. *dune* is a *sand-hill* near the sea.

(16) *Mersc* (II. 2.) *marsh*; P. *mesh*.

(17) *Mór* (II. 2.) *moor*; D. *moer*.

(18) *Clud* (II. 2.) *rock, cliff*

(19) *Bær* (II.) *bare*; G. *bar*.

(20) *Sand, sond* (II. 2.) *sand*

wyrt, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þære stówe þe his eard and æðelo<sup>(1)</sup> býð on tó weaxanne, and sete on un-cyndre<sup>(2)</sup> stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwð hit þær náuht, ac for-searð<sup>(3)</sup>; for-þám ælces landes ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrta and ge-lícne wudu tydrige<sup>(4)</sup>; and hit swa déð, friðað<sup>(5)</sup>, and fyrðrað<sup>(6)</sup> swíðe georne<sup>(7)</sup>, swá longe swá heora ge-cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú for-hwý ælc sáed<sup>(8)</sup> grówe innon þá eorðan, and tó ciðum<sup>(9)</sup> and tó wyrt-rumum<sup>(10)</sup> weorðe on þære eorðan, búton for-þý-þe hí teohhiad<sup>(11)</sup> þæt se stemn<sup>(12)</sup> and se helm<sup>(13)</sup> móte þý fæstor and þý leng standan? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan, þeáh þú hit ge-seón ne mæge, þæt eal se dæl, se-þe þæs treówes on twelf monðum ge-weaxeð, þæt he on-ginnð of þám wyrt-rumum, and swá úp-weardes gréwð oð þone stemn, and síð-þán and-lang þæs piðan<sup>(14)</sup>, and and-lang þære rinde<sup>(15)</sup> oð þone helm, and síð-þán æfter<sup>(16)</sup> þám bogum<sup>(17)</sup>, oð-þæt hit

(1) *Nature.*(2) Un-cynde (I.) *un-kind, unnatural.*(3) For-searian *to fade, become sear.*(4) Tydrían *to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring, progeny.*(5) Friðian *to make flourish, grow well; frið II. 2. peace, G. friede.*(6) Fyrðrian *to further, forward, assist, from forð.*(7) *Willingly, readily, earnestly; G. gerne.*(8) Sáed (II. 1.) *seed; G. saat, D. zaad.*(9) Cið (II. 2.) *shoot, sprout.*(10) Wyrtruma *root.*(11) Teohhian *to resolve, endeavour.*(12) *Stem, trunk.*(13) *Crown, head, top, helm-et.*(14) Piða *pith; D. pit.*(15) Rind (II. 3.) *rind, bark; G. rinde.*(16) *Along; like L. secundum.*(17) Boh (II. 2.) *bough.*

út-a-springð<sup>(1)</sup> on leáfum<sup>(2)</sup>, and on blostmum<sup>(3)</sup>, and on blædum<sup>(4)</sup>? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan þætte ælc wuht cwices býð innan-weard hnescost<sup>(5)</sup>, and útan-weard heardost? Hwæt þú miht ge-seón hú þæt treów býð útan ge-scyrped<sup>(6)</sup>, and be-wæfed<sup>(7)</sup> mid þære rinde wið þone winter, and wið þa stearc-an<sup>(8)</sup> stormas, and eác wið þære sunnan háeto on sumera<sup>(9)</sup>. Hwá mæg þæt he ne wundrige swylcra gesceafta úres Sceoppendes<sup>(10)</sup>, and huru<sup>(11)</sup> þæs Sceoppendes? And þeah we his nú wundrien, hwylc úre mæg a-reccan<sup>(12)</sup> medem-líce<sup>(13)</sup> úres Sceoppendes willan, and an-weald, hú his gesceafta weaxað and eft waniað<sup>(14)</sup> þonne þæs tíma<sup>(15)</sup> cymð, and of heora sæde weorðað eft ge-ed-níwade<sup>(16)</sup>, swylce hí þonne wurdon tó ed-sceafta<sup>(17)</sup>?

(1) Ut-a-springan (III. 1.) *to spring, shoot out.*

(2) Leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub.

(3) Blostm (II. 2.) *blossom*; D. bloessem.

(4) Blæd (II. 3.) *fruit, branch*; G. blatt, D. blad *leaf, blade.*

(5) Hnesc (I.) *soft, tender, nesh.*

(6) Ge-scyrpan (I. 2.) *to scarf, cover*; sceorp (II. 1.) *scarf.*

(7) Be-wæfan (I. 2.) *to clothe*; wæfels *garment.*

(8) Stearc (I.) *stark, strong, violent*; G. stark.

(9) See p. 15.

(10) Sceoppend or Scyppend (p. 5.) *Creator*; scyppan *to create*; G. schaffen, schöpfen, D. scheppen.

(11) *At least, at all events.*

(12) *Reckon, tell up.*

(13) *Fitly, worthily*; medeme middling, *moderate, meet.*

(14) *Wanian to wane, from wana want.*

(15) *The season for that.*

(16) See p. 42.

(17) Ed-sceaft (II. 3.) *new creation: as if they then became newly created.*



## CHAPTER IX.

---

### VERSE EXTRACTS.

---

#### I.—*Narrative Verse.*

Anglo-Saxon Poetry is of various kinds, distinguished by rime, by alliteration, or by both; the commonest however only, termed Narrative Verse, will be here described. Its chief characteristic is *Alliteration*<sup>(1)</sup>, or the correspondence of the first letters of a certain number of the most important words in each line of a couplet, two called *sub-letters* riming thus together in the first line, and answering to a third called the *chief letter* in the second. The first line has often but one sub-letter and never more than two; the second never more than one chief letter. The length of the lines varies much, each however must contain at least two emphatic or root syllables, with one or more unemphatic, that is prefixes, terminations, &c.: few lines have less than four syllables, two emphatic, and two unemphatic, and some

(1) Alliteration is found in the Latin poetry of the middle ages, sometimes combined with line and final rime, and syllabic metre; it was used more or less in England along with other kinds of rime till a late period, and is still usual in the Scandinavian tongues. The Vision of Piers Plouhman (1350) is a long and regular specimen of English alliterative poetry, on the above rules. For a full account of the A. S. versification, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 136—68.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example<sup>(1)</sup> :

Hú <i>lomp</i> <sup>(2)</sup> eów on	How befell it you on <i>your</i>
<i>lāde</i> <sup>(3)</sup>	voyage
<i>leófa</i> Beó-wulf,	dear Beówulf,
þá þú <i>færinga</i>	when thou suddenly
<i>feor</i> ge-hogodest	far off determinedst
<i>sæcce</i> <sup>(4)</sup> sécean	warfare to seek
ofer sealt wæter,	over <i>the</i> salt water,
<i>hilde</i> <sup>(5)</sup> tó <i>Heorote</i> <sup>(6)</sup> ?	battle at Heorot ?
Ac þú <i>Hróð-gáre</i>	Hast thou then Hróthgár
wið <i>cúðne wean</i> <sup>(7)</sup>	against <i>his</i> known plague
<i>wiht</i> ge-béttest <sup>(8)</sup> ,	ought bootied,
<i>márum þeódne</i> <sup>(9)</sup> ?	<i>the</i> famous prince ?

Here the first couplet has in the first line two sub-letters, the *l* in *lomp* and *lāde*, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in *leófa* in the second. The third line has but one sub-letter, the *f* in *færinga* which rimes with

(1) Beówulf, ed. Kemble l. 3969—79.

(2) *Limpan* (III. 1.) *to happen*.

(3) *Ládu* (III. 3.) *líðan to travel, journey, chiefly by sea*.

(4) *Sæc* (II. 3.) hence *sack* of a town.

(5) *Hild* (II. 3.) *battle, war*.

(6) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Danish tribe.

(7) *Wea evil, misfortune*.

(8) *Bétan to profit, improve, do good to* ; *bót* (II. 3.) *boot, profit*.

(9) Though quantity and number of syllables seem no essential part of A. S. versification, many lines will bear a more or less regular scanning ; thus most short lines consist either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and spondee like the 10th : the 3rd, and 6th, also might be called imperfect adonics.

that in *f*eor in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wið* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period; the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

<i>U'tan ymbe æðelne</i>	Without round <i>the</i> noble
<i>englas stódon.</i>	angels stood.
<i>Eorðan æ'ht-ge-streón,</i>	Earth's possessions,
<i>æpplede gold.</i>	applied <sup>(1)</sup> gold.

In the first example the sub-letters *ú* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub-letters are usually double likewise; as,

<i>Frægn from-líce</i> <sup>(2)</sup>	<i>He</i> asked prudently
<i>fruman and ende.</i>	<i>the</i> beginning and end.
<i>Sceán scír</i> <sup>(3)</sup> werod,	Shone <i>the</i> bright host,
<i>scyldas lixton.</i>	shields gleamed.

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *d-appled*, as *asphodel* (O. *affadil*) has become *d-affodil*; *dappled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-graauw*: comp. F. *gris-pommelé*.

<sup>(2)</sup> From *brave, pious* &c. G. *fromm*.

<sup>(3)</sup> *Clear, sheer*; G. *schier*.

falls only on the first root-letter of the word before which they stand: viz. a-, be-(bi-), ge-, to-, for-, æt, oð, of, geond, þurh; as,

A-rædde and a-rehte                    *That he* should read and  
relate

hwæt seó rún<sup>(1)</sup> bude.                    what the rune boded.

---

þonne be-hófað                            When it behoveth  
se-þe her wunað.                        him that here dwelleth.

---

þá ge-worhte he þurh his            Then wrought he through  
    wís-dóm                                his wisdom  
tyn engla werod.                        ten legions of angels.

---

To-sweóp hine and to-                *He* swept and dashed it  
    swende                                away  
þurh his swíðan miht.                through his strong might.

---

þý-læs þú for-weorðe                Lest thou perish  
mid þissum wær-logan <sup>(2)</sup>            with these false ones.

---

Se-þe æt-feohtan                        Who to fight  
frum-gárum <sup>(3)</sup>—                        with *the* patriarchs—

---

(1) Rún (II. 3.) a secret, mystery, letter, hieroglyph; here the hand-writing on the wall: hence to round, whisper; G. raunen.

(2) Wær-loga a breaker of faith; hence war-lock: wær (II. 3.) a promise, compact, loga a lyer, from leógan to lye.

(3) Gár (II. 2.) a (missile) weapon, spear (= L. telum), chief; it forms part of many proper names, as Gár-mund, Eád-gár Edgar, &c.

þá hie gielp-sceaðan<sup>(1)</sup> Since them *those* braggart-  
 rebels  
 of-gifen hæfdon. had given up.

---

Síð-þán hie feóndum After they *the* foes  
 oð-faren hæfdon. had escaped.

---

Geond-folen fýre Filled through with fire  
 and fær-cyle<sup>(2)</sup>. and intense cold.

---

Wylm<sup>(3)</sup> þurh-wódon<sup>(4)</sup> *They the* flame had passed  
 through  
 swá him wiht ne sceód— so that them no whit hurt—

---

Big (bi), on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and some-  
 times do not; as,

And begen þa beornas And both the warriors  
 þe him big-stódon. who stood by him.  
 Big-standað me strange Stand by me strong com-  
 ge-neátas<sup>(5)</sup> rades  
 þa ne willað me æt þám who will not fail me at  
 stríðe<sup>(6)</sup> ge-swícan. the strife.

---

(1) Gilp (II. 2.) *boast*; *sceaða* *enemy, robber, &c.*

(2) Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem*; in composition it implies *suddenness, danger*, or the like; fær-líc *dangerous*; G. ge-fahr *danger*, ge-fähr-lich *dangerous*. Cyle II. 2.; hence *chill*; G. kühle.

(3) Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. *æstus*); welan, weallan *to boil*; G. wallen.

(4) Wadan (II. 3.) *to go*; L. vadere.

(5) Ge-neát; G. ge-noss, D. ge-noot.

(6) Stríð (II. 2.) G. streit, D. strijd.

þæt we þær eágum	What we there with <i>our</i>
on-lóciad.	eyes
On-hycgað nú	look upon.
hálige mihte.	Think now on
	<i>the</i> holy might.

---

And þurh ofer-metto	And through pride
sóhton óðer land.	<i>they</i> sought another land.
Uton ofer-hycgan	Let us despise
helm <sup>(1)</sup> þone miclan.	the great Supreme.

---

Eorðan ymb-hwyrft	Earth's circuit
and úp-rodor <sup>(2)</sup> .	and <i>the</i> upper sky.
Heofon ymb-hweorfest,	<i>Thou</i> compassest heaven,
and þurh þíne hálige	and through thy holy
miht—	might—

---

And-, un-, ed-, in, tó, &c. are deemed emphatic and therefore rime; as,

Him þá Adam	Him then Adam
and-swarode.	answered.

---

Un-lytel dæl	No little part
eorðan ge-sceafta.	of earth's creatures.

---

(1) Helm is the *top* of anything; see p. 133, n. 13.

(2) Rodor (II. 2.) *heaven, sky*.

Ne hí *ed-cerres* (1)  
*æfre móton wénan.*

Nor they for return  
 ever could hope.

Hæfde þá se *æðeling*  
*in-ge-þancum* (2)—

Had then the noble  
 fervently—

Him þæt *tácen weard*  
*þær he tó-starode* (3).

To him that *a* token was  
 where he stared.

## II.—*Metres of Boëthius* (4).

\*.\* The following is King Ælfred's translation of  
 Boëthius, Lib. III. metr. I.

Se-þe wille wyrcan  
 wæstm-bære lond,  
 a-teó of þám æcere  
 ærest sona  
 fearn (5), and þornas (6),  
 and fyrsas, swá-same (7)  
 weód (8),

He that will work  
 fruitful land,  
 let him pluck off the field  
 first straightway  
 fern, and thorns,  
 and furzes, as also weeds,

(1) *Cer*, *cyr* (II. 2.) *turn*; hence *char* a *turn* of work; *cyrran* to *turn*, *re-turn*; G. *kehren*.

(2) Adverb formed from the dative plural; see p. 70. Comp. G. *ein-ge-denck* *mindful*, *thoughtful*.

(3) *Starian*; G. *starren*, D. *staaren*.

(4) Chiefly from the Rev. S. Fox's edition.

(5) P. *vearn*, G. *farn-kraut*.

(6) *Þorn*; G. *dorn*.

(7) *Same* is connected with our *same*.

(8) *Weód* (II. 1.) D. *wied*.

þa þe willað	that will
wel-hwær <sup>(1)</sup> derian	everywhere hurt
clánum hwáete,	<i>the</i> clean wheat,
þý-læs he ciða-leás <sup>(2)</sup>	lest it germ-less
licge on þáem lande.	lie on the land.
Is leóda <sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwæm	Is to all people
þeós óðru bysen	this other example
efn be-héfe <sup>(4)</sup> ;	even <i>as</i> needful ;
þæt is þætte þinced <sup>(5)</sup>	that is that seemeth
þegna ge-hwylcum	to every man
huniges <sup>(6)</sup> beó-breád	honey's bee-bread
healfe þý swétre,	half the sweeter,
gif he hwene <sup>(7)</sup> ár	if he a little ere
huniges teare <sup>(8)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> honey's drop,
bitres on-byrgað.	<i>something</i> bitter tasteth.
Býð eác swá-same	Is eke in like wise
mouna áeg-hwyle	every man
micle þý fægenra	much the gladder
líðes <sup>(9)</sup> wedres <sup>(10)</sup> ,	of fair weather,
gif hine lytle ár	if him a little ere
stormas ge-stondað <sup>(11)</sup> ,	storms assail,

(1) Wel prefixed is intensive ; wel-oft *very often*, wel-hraðe *very soon*.

(2) Cið shoot, *growth of any kind* ; hence *kid*, used either of a child or a young animal : comp. the uses of *imp*, *scion*, *sprig*, &c.

(3) Leóde *people, persons* ; G. leute, D. lieden.

(4) Be-hófan *to need, be-hove*.

(5) See Additions, &c.

(6) G. honig.

(7) Hwene, *hwon a little*, S. *a wheen*.

(8) Tear (II. 2.) *tear* ; G. zäbre.

(9) Líðe *tender, mild, lithe* ; G. linde : observe the n dropped and the vowel lengthened, and see p. 2, and Additions, &c.

(10) Weder (II. 1.) G. wetter, D. weder.

(11) Observe the force of ge- ; see p. 64.



and se stearca <sup>(1)</sup> wind	and the violent wind
nordan and eástan.	from north and east.
Náenigum þúhte	To none would seem
dæg on þonce <sup>(2)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> day delightful,
gif seó dimme niht	if the dim night
ær ofer eldum <sup>(3)</sup>	before over men
egesan <sup>(4)</sup> ne bróhte.	terror had not brought.
Swá þincð ánra ge-hwæm	So seemeth to every one
eord-búendra	of <i>the</i> earth-dwellers
seó sóðe ge-sæld <sup>(5)</sup>	the true happiness
simle þe betere,	ever the better,
and þý wynsumre,	and the winsomer,
þe he wíta má,	as he more plagues,
heardra hænda <sup>(6)</sup> ,	<i>and</i> hard afflictions,
her a-dreóged <sup>(7)</sup> .	here suffereth.
þú meahht eác micle þý éð	Thou mayst eke much the
	easier
on mód-sefan	in <i>thy</i> mind
sóðe ge-sældea	true happinesses
sweótolor ge-cnáwan,	clearlier know,
and tó heora cyððe <sup>(8)</sup>	and to their country
be-cuman síð-þán,	come afterwards,
gif þú úp-a-týhst	if thou pluckest up

(1) Stearc *stark, strong*; G. stark, D. sterk.

(2) Þonc (þanc) (II. 2.) *thank*; G. dank: comp. L. gratiæ and gratus.

(3) Eld, yld (II. 2.) *man, human being*.

(4) Egesa = ege *awe, dread*.

(5) II. 3. from sél, sæl *good*.

(6) Hænðu (hýnðu) III. 3.; heán *abject, miserable*.

(7) (A-)dreógan (III. 3.) *to suffer*; S. dree.

(8) Cyððu (III. 3.) also *acquaintance, knowledge, hence kith*.

ærest sona,  
 and þú a-wyrt-walast  
 of ge-wit-locan<sup>(1)</sup>  
 leáse ge-sældā,  
 swá-swá londes-ceorl<sup>(2)</sup>  
 of his æcere list<sup>(3)</sup>  
 yfel weód monig.  
 Síð þán ic þe secge  
 þæt þú sweótole meahst  
 sóðe ge-sældā  
 sona on-cnáwan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
 and þú æfre ne recst  
 æniges þinges  
 ofer þa áne,  
 gif þú hí ealles on-gitst.

first forthwith,  
 and thou rootest  
 out of *thy* understanding  
 false happinesses,  
 as *the* husbandman  
 off his field gathers  
 many *an* evil weed.  
 Afterwards I say to thee  
 that thou clearly mayst  
 true happinesses  
 soon recognise,  
 and thou never wilt reck  
 for anything  
 above them alone,  
 if thou them quite under-  
 standest.

(1) (Ge-) wit (II. 1.) *wit, loca fold, locker, place shut or locked up.*

(2) Ceorl *man (free not noble) husband, churl; S. carl; G. kerl.*

(3) Lesan (II. 1.) *to gather, pick; hence lease, to glean. G. lesen to gather read; comp. L. legere.*

(4) Comp. G. er-kennen.

III.—*Cædmon* (1).

\* \* \* Cædmon, the Anglo-Saxon Milton, author of the Metrical Paraphrase of parts of the Holy Scriptures, from which the following extracts are taken, was first a herdsman, afterwards a monk in the Abbey of Streonshalh or Whitby, then ruled by S. Hild: he flourished in the 7th century. For an account of him from Ælfred's version of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, see Mr. Thorpe's preface to his edition of Cædmon, and his *Analecta Anglo-Saxonica*, pp. 54-8.

## Part of Book I. Canto II.

Her ærest ge-sceóp	Here first shaped
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
Helm (2) eal-wihtā,	Chief of all creatures,
heofon and eorðan,	heaven and earth,
rodor a-rærde,	<i>the</i> firmament reared,
and þis rúme (3) land	and this spacious land
ge-staðelode	established
strangum mihtum,	by <i>his</i> strong powers,
Freá (4) æl-mihtig.	<i>the</i> Lord almighty.
Folde wæs þá gyt	<i>The</i> earth was then yet
græse un-gréne;	with grass not green;

(1) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, more literally translated.

(2) See p. 133. n. 13.

(3) Rúm *wide, roomy*.

(4) G. frau (*noble*) woman, lady is connected with freá.

gár-secg<sup>(1)</sup> þeahte,  
 swært<sup>(2)</sup> sin-nihte,  
 síde<sup>(3)</sup> and wíde,  
 wonne<sup>(4)</sup> wegás.  
 Þá wæs wuldor-torht  
 heofon-weardes gást  
 ofer holm<sup>(5)</sup> boren  
 miclum spédum<sup>(6)</sup> :  
 Metod<sup>(7)</sup> engla héht,  
 lifes Brytta<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 leóht forð-cuman  
 ofer rúmne grund<sup>(9)</sup>.  
 Raðe wæs ge-fylled  
 heáh-cyninges hæs ;  
 him wæs hálíg leóht  
 ofer wéstenne,  
 swá se Wyrhta be-beád.  
 Þá ge-sundrode  
 sigora<sup>(10)</sup> Waldend  
 ofer lago-flóde  
 leóht wið þeóstrum<sup>(11)</sup>,

ocean covered,  
 swart in eternal night,  
 far and wide,  
*the* dusky ways.  
 Then was *the* glory-bright  
 heaven's Guardian's spirit  
 over *the* deep born  
 with great speed :  
*the* Creator of angels bade,  
 life's Distributor,  
 light come forth  
 over *the* wide abyss.  
 Quickly was fulfilled  
*the* high King's behest ;  
 for him was holy light  
 over *the* waste,  
 as the Maker commanded.  
 Then sundered  
*the* Ruler of triumphs  
 over *the* water-flood  
 light from darkness,

(1) An obscure mythological word ; gár (II. 2.) *weapon*, *secg man*, *warrior*.

(2) *Black*, *swart*, *swarthy* ; G. schwarz, D. zwart.

(3) *Síd wide*.

(4) *Won*, *wan wan*, *dark*.

(5) *Holm* means also an *island* in the sea ; *Steep-holm*, *Born-holm*, &c.

(6) *Spéd* (II. 3.) *success*, *prosperity*, *speed* ; D. spoed.

(7) From *metan to mete*, *measure* : He who "measured the waters, and meted out heaven."

(8) *Bryttian to distribute*.

(9) II. 2. *ground*, *bottom*, *depth* ; G. grund.

(10) *Sigor* (II. 2.) = *sige victory*.

(11) *þeóstru* = *þýstru*.

sceade (1) wið scíman (2);	shade from brightness;
sceóp þá bám, naman,	created then for both,
	names,
lifes Brytta.	life's Distributor.
Leóht wæs árest	Light was first
þurh Dryhtnes word	through <i>the</i> Lord's word
dæg ge-nemned;	day named;
wlíte-beorhte ge-sceaft!	beauty-bright creation!
Wel lícode	Well pleased
Freán æt frymde (3)	<i>the</i> Lord at <i>the</i> beginning
ford-bære (4) tíð.	<i>the</i> teeming time.

---

Part of Book I. Canto XVI.

þá tó Euan God	Then to Eve God
yrringa (5) spræc:	angrily spake:
Wend (6) þe from wynne (7);	Turn thee from joy;
þú scealt wæpned-men	thou shalt to man
wesan on ge-wealde;	be in subjection;
mid weres egsan	with fear of <i>thy</i> husband
hearde ge-nearwad (8),	hardly straitened,
heán, þrowian (9)	abject, suffer <i>for</i>
þínra dáða ge-dwild (10)—	thy deeds' error—

(1) For *sceadwe*; *sceadu* (-o) (II. 2.) G. *schatte*.

(2) *Scíma* *light*, *skimmer*.

(3) *Frymð* (II. 2.)

(4) Lit. *forth-bearing*.

(5) See p. 70—1; from *yrr* (II. 2.) *ire*, *anger*; L. *ira*.

(6) *Wendan* *to turn*, *wend*, *go*; G. *wenden*.

(7) *Wyn* (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. *wonne*.

(8) *Ge-nearwian*, from *nearu* *to make narrow*, *afflict*, *oppress*.

(9) Hence *throe*.

(10) II. 3. *dwelian* *to err*.

deádes bídan ;	death abide ;
and þurh wóp <sup>(1)</sup> and heáf,	and through weeping and moan,
on woruld cennan <sup>(2)</sup> ,	into <i>the</i> world bear,
þurh sár <sup>(3)</sup> micel,	through much pain,
sunu and dóhtor.	son and daughter.
A-beád eác Adame	Announced eke to Adam
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
lifes Leóht-fruma,	Author of life's light,
láð ærende <sup>(4)</sup> :	<i>the</i> dire errand :
þú scealt óðerne	Thou shalt <i>another</i>
éðel <sup>(5)</sup> sécean,	country seek,
wyn-leásran wíc,	<i>a</i> joyless dwelling,
and on wræc <sup>(6)</sup> hweorf-	and into exile go,
an <sup>(7)</sup> ,	
nacod <sup>(8)</sup> , níed-wædla <sup>(9)</sup> ,	naked, <i>a</i> needy beggar,
neorxna-wanges <sup>(10)</sup>	of Paradise's
dúgedum be-dæled :	blessings deprived :
þe is ge-dál witod <sup>(11)</sup>	to thee is <i>a</i> parting de- creed
líces <sup>(12)</sup> and sáwle.	of body and soul.

(1) II. 2. hence *whoop*.(2) I. 2. comp. γενειν, L. genere ; hence *to kindle*.(3) II. 1. *sore*.(4) III. 1. from *an messenger*.(5) II. 2. *native country, home*.

(6) II. 3.

(7) III. 1. *to turn, return, go*.

(8) G. nackt.

(9) Níed = neód.

(10) Neorxna-wang (II. 2.) a word of doubtful etymology ; wang is *plain, field*.(11) Witian *to decide, decree* ; hence witod-líce.(12) Líc (II. 1.) *corpse, dead body* ; G. leich, D. lijk : hence lich-gate *to a Churchyard, like-wake watching a corpse, &c.*

Hwæt! þú láð-lice  
 wróhte<sup>(1)</sup> on-stealdest;  
 for-þón þú winnan<sup>(2)</sup>  
     scealt,  
 and on eorðan þe  
 þíne and-lifne<sup>(3)</sup>  
 selfa ge-ræcan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
 wegan<sup>(5)</sup> swátig<sup>(6)</sup>  
     hleor<sup>(7)</sup>,  
 þínne hláf etan,  
 þenden þú her leofast,  
 oð-þæt þe tó heortan  
 hearde grípeð<sup>(8)</sup>  
 adl<sup>(9)</sup> un-líðe,  
 þe þú on æple<sup>(10)</sup> áer  
 selfa for-swulge<sup>(11)</sup>;  
 for-þón þú sweltan scealt.  
 Hwæt! we nú ge-hýrað

Lo! thou foully  
 crime didst commit;  
 therefore thou shalt la-  
     bour,  
 and on earth to thee  
 thy livelihood  
 thyself obtain,  
 wear a sweaty face,  
 thy bread eat,  
 while thou here livest,  
 until thee at heart  
 hardly gripeth  
 ungentle ailment,  
 which thou in *the* apple  
     erst  
 thyself swallowedst down;  
 therefore thou shalt die.  
 Lo! we now hear

(1) Wróht (IX. 3.); wrégan *to accuse*; comp. L. *crimen*.

(2) Winnan (III. 1.) *to battle, struggle, toil*, also *to win*; ge-winn *la-bour*, &c.

(3) And-lifn II. 3.

(4) I. 2. lit. *reach*; G. *reichen*, D. *reiken*.

(5) II. 1. *to wag, move, bear*; hence wæg *wey (weight)*, wæg *wave*, wægn *wagon*.

(6) Swát (II. 2.) *sweat*; G. *schweiss*, D. *zweet*.

(7) II. 1. *jaw, cheek*; hence *countenance, complexion*, O. *lere*.

(8) Grípan (III. 2.) G. *greifen*, D. *grijpen*.

(9) II. 3. *ail, disease*.

(10) Æpl, æppel (II. 2.) G. *apfel*, D. *appel*.

(11) For-swelgan (III. 1.) *to devour*; G. *ver-schwelgen*.

hwær ús hearm-stafas <sup>(1)</sup>	where to us sorrow
wræde <sup>(2)</sup> on-wócon <sup>(3)</sup> ,	in wrath up-sprang
and woruld-yrmdo <sup>(4)</sup> .	and worldly misery.
Hie þá wuldres Weard	Them then glory's Keeper
wædum <sup>(5)</sup> gyrede,	with weeds provided,
Scyppend ússer,	our Creator,
hét heora sceome <sup>(6)</sup> þecc-	bade their shame hide,
an,	
Freá, frum-hrægle ;	<i>the</i> Lord, with <i>the</i> first
	garment ;
hét hie from-hweorfan	bade them depart from
neorxna-wange	Paradise
on nearore lif.	into <i>a</i> narrower life.
Him on laste <sup>(7)</sup> be-leác <sup>(8)</sup>	Behind them locked up
líðra and wynna	of comforts and joys
hyht-fulne <sup>(9)</sup> hám,	<i>the</i> hopeful home,
hálig engel,	<i>a</i> holy angel,
be Freán háse,	by <i>his</i> Lord's behest,
fýrene <sup>(10)</sup> sweorde.	with fiery sword.
Ne mæg þær inwit-ful <sup>(11)</sup>	May not there guileful
ánig ge-feran,	any journey,

(1) *Hearm* (II. 2.) *grief, harm, calamity*; G. *harm*. *Stafas* (plur. of *stæf*) forms the second part of several poetical compounds; as, *ende-stafas* *end, ár-stafas* *honour, &c.*

(2) *Wræð* II. 3.

(3) *On-wacan* (II. 3.) *to awake, arise, be born.*

(4) III. 3. from *earm* *poor.*

(5) *Wæd* (III. 1.) *weed, garment.*

(6) *Sceamu* (III. 3.) G. *scham.*

(7) *Last* (II. 2.) *footstep.*

(8) *Be-lúcan* III. 3.

(9) *Hyht* (II. 3.) *hope.*

(10) *Fýren* *of fire.*

(11) *Inwit* (II. 1.) *deceit, treachery.*



wom-scyldig<sup>(1)</sup> mon ;  
 ac se weard hafad  
 miht and strengðo<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 se þæt mære lif  
 dúgeðum<sup>(3)</sup> deóre,  
 Dryhtne healdeð.  
 Nó hwæðre Æl-mihtig

ealra wolde  
 Adam and Euan  
 árna<sup>(4)</sup> of-teón,  
 Fæder æt Frymðe,  
 þeáh he him from-  
 swice<sup>(5)</sup> ;  
 ac he him tó frófre let

hwæðre forð-wesan  
 hyrstedne<sup>(6)</sup> hróf<sup>(7)</sup>  
 hálgum tunglum<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 and him grund-welan<sup>(9)</sup>  
 ginne sealde ;

stain-guilty man ;  
 but the keeper hath  
 might and strength,  
 who that exalted life  
 to *the* good dear,  
 for *the* Lord holdeth.  
 Not however *the* Al-  
 mighty  
 of all would  
 Adam and Eve  
 means deprive,  
*the* Father from *the* be-  
 ginning,  
 though he from them had  
 withdrawn ;  
 but he to them for solace  
 let  
 nevertheless continue forth  
*the* adorned roof  
 with holy stars,  
 and them earth-riches  
 ample gave ;

(1) Wom (II. 2.) *spot, defilement.*

(2) Strengðo (-u) (III. 3.) = strengð II. 3.

(3) Dúguð (II. 3.) *virtue, benefit, nobility, chief men* ; from dugan.

(4) A'r (II. 3.) *honour, wealth, &c.* ; nouns of this class sometimes have a simple or weak genitive plural.

(5) Swícan (III. 2.) *to cease, depart from.*

(6) Hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament.*

(7) II. 2. D. roef.

(8) Tungel (III. 1.) *heavenly body.*

(9) Wela *weal, wealth.*

hét þám sin-híwum <sup>(1)</sup>	bade the pairs
sás and eorðan	of sea and earth
tuddor teóndra <sup>(2)</sup> ,	producing offspring,
teóhha <sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwylces	of every substance
tó woruld-nytte <sup>(4)</sup>	to worldly use
wæstmas fédan <sup>(5)</sup> .	fruits bring forth.
Ge-sáeton þá æfter synne	<i>They</i> occupied then after
	<i>their</i> sin
sorg-fulre land,	a sorrowfuller land,
eard and éðel	a dwelling and home
un-spédigran <sup>(6)</sup>	more barren
fremena <sup>(7)</sup> ge-hwylcre	of every good thing
þonne se frum-stól <sup>(8)</sup> wæs	than the first seat was
þe hie æfter dáede	which they after <i>that</i> deed
of-a-drifen wurdon.	were driven from.

(1) Sin-híwa *mate, partner.*(2) Teón *to draw, pro-duce.*(3) Teóh (teóg) III. 1. *stuff, material; G. zeug.*

(4) Nyt (II. 3.) G. nutz, D. nut.

(5) Comp. L. fet-us, &amp;c.

(6) Spédig *wealthy.*(7) Freme (I. 3.) *advantage, benefit.*(8) Stól (II. 2.) G. stuhl, D. stoel; hence *stool.*

IV.—*Beówulf*(<sup>1</sup>).

\* \* \* The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beówulf, King of the Weder-Geáts or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V. (<sup>2</sup>)

Stræt ( <sup>3</sup> ) wæs stán-fáh,	<i>The</i> stræt was variegated
	with stones,
stíg ( <sup>4</sup> ) wísode ( <sup>5</sup> )	<i>the</i> path guided
gumum æt-gædere;	<i>the</i> men together;
gúð-byrne ( <sup>6</sup> ) scán,	<i>the</i> war-corslet shone,
heard, hond-locen ( <sup>7</sup> );	hard, hand-locked;
hring-íren ( <sup>8</sup> ) scír	<i>the</i> ring-iron bright
song in searwum ( <sup>9</sup> ),	sang in <i>their</i> trappings,
pá hie tó sele ( <sup>10</sup> ) furðum,	when they to <i>the</i> hall for-
	ward,

(<sup>1</sup>) From Mr. Kemble's edition; the translation has been adapted to read line by line.

(<sup>2</sup>) Line 637—676.

(<sup>3</sup>) II. 3. L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

(<sup>4</sup>) II. 3. G. steig, hence stígan *to go, mount*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Wísian *to show, direct*, governing the dative; G. weisen.

(<sup>6</sup>) Gúð II. 3.; byrne (I. 3.) O. birnie.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Clasped, closed by the hand*.

(<sup>8</sup>) Hring (II. 2.) G. ring: íren (ísen) (III. 1.) G. eisen. The corslet was of *ring* or *chain* mail.

(<sup>9</sup>) Searu (III. 1.) *equipment, chiefly for war*.

(<sup>10</sup>) II. 2. L. aula, G. saal, F. salle.

in hyra grýre-geatwum <sup>(1)</sup> ,	in their terrible harness,
gangan cwomon.	proceeded to go.
Setton sæ-méde <sup>(2)</sup>	<i>The</i> sea-weary men set
síde scyldas,	<i>their</i> wide shields,
rondas <sup>(3)</sup> regn-hearde <sup>(4)</sup> ,	<i>their</i> very hard bucklers,
wið þæs recedes weal.	by the house wall.
Bugon þá tó bence,	<i>They</i> turned then to a
	bench,
byrnan hringdon,	<i>their</i> corslets laid in a
	ring,
gúð-searo gumena ;	<i>the</i> war-trapping of men :
gáras stódon	<i>their</i> javelins stood
sæ-manna searo	sea-men's arms
samod æt-gædere,	all together,
æsc-holt <sup>(5)</sup> úfan græg <sup>(6)</sup> :	ash-wood above gray :
wæs se íren-þreát	the iron-crowd was
wæpnum ge-wurðad.	by <i>the</i> weapons honoured.
þá þær wlonc hæled <sup>(7)</sup>	Then there a proud war-
	rrior
oret-mecgas <sup>(8)</sup>	<i>the</i> sons of battle
æfter hæledum frægn :	after <i>the</i> heroes asked :
Hwanon ferigeað ge	Whence bear ye

(<sup>1</sup>) Grýre (II. 2.) *horror* ; comp. G. es grauet, O. it grows. Geatwe (ge-tawe) (I. 3.) = searu. (<sup>2</sup>) G. müde.

(<sup>3</sup>) Rand (rond) *edge* (G. rand), *shield*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Regen- is an intensive prefix.

(<sup>5</sup>) Æsc (II. 3.) G. esche ; holt (II. 1.) *holt* ; G. holz, D. hout.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. grau.

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 2. G. held.

(<sup>8</sup>) Mecg (mæg) *kins-man, son, man*, connected with mæg, and maga, and all with Mac-.

fætte scyldas,	<i>your</i> thick shields,
græge syrcan <sup>(1)</sup> ,	gray shirts,
and grim-helmas <sup>(2)</sup> ,	and visor-helms,
here-sceafta <sup>(3)</sup> heáp?	<i>your</i> war-shafts' heap?
Ic eom Hród-gáres	I am Hróthgár's
ar and om-biht <sup>(4)</sup> :	messenger and servant :
ne seáh ic el-þeódig	never saw I foreign
þus manige men	thus many men
módig-lícran :	haughtier :
wén <sup>(5)</sup> is þæt ge for	I ween that ye for pride,
wlenco <sup>(6)</sup> ,	
nalles for wræc-síðum <sup>(7)</sup>	not for exile
ac for hyge-þrymmum <sup>(8)</sup> ,	but for magnanimity,
Hród-gár sóhton.	have sought Hróthgár.

---

Part of Canto XXII.<sup>(9)</sup>

Beó-wulf maðelode <sup>(10)</sup> ,	Beówulf harangued,
bearn Ecg-þeówes :	son of Ecgtheów :
Ge-þenc nú se mæra	Consider now <i>thou</i> the
	famous
maga Healf-denes,	son of Healfdene,

(1) Syrce (I. 3.) S. sark ; *gray shirts of iron chain-mail.*

(2) Grime (II. 2.) *mask, part of the helmet covering the face.*

(3) Scaft (II. 2.) G. schaft.

(4) Om- (am-) bihtu *office* ; G. amt.

(5) (II. 3.) *hope, expectation* : wén is there is reason to suppose.

(6) Wlenco (III. 3.) from wlanc *proud.*

(7) Wræc (II. 3.) *exile, &c.* ; síð *journey.*

(8) Hyge (II. 2.) *mind, hycgan (hogian) to think* ; þrym (II. 2.) *glory.*

(9) Line 2945—2998.

(10) Meðel (II. 1.) *discourse, speech.*

snottra <sup>(1)</sup> fengel,	prudent chief,
nú ic eom sídes fús,	now I am ready to de-
	part,
gold-wine <sup>(2)</sup> gumena,	patron of men,
hwæt wit geó spræcon;	what we two erst spake ;
gif ic æt þearfe	if I at thy need
þínre sceolde	should
aldre linnan,	from life cease,
þæt þú me á wære	that thou to me ever
	wouldst be
ford-ge-witenum,	departed,
on fæder stæle <sup>(3)</sup> .	in <i>a</i> father's stead.
Wæs þú mund-bora <sup>(4)</sup>	Be thou <i>a</i> protector
mínun mago-þegnum,	to my kindred thanes,
hond-ge-sellum <sup>(5)</sup> ,	<i>my</i> near comrades,
gif mec hild nime.	if me battle should take.
Swylce þú þa mádmas <sup>(6)</sup>	Likewise do thou the
	treasures
þe þú me sealdest,	that thou gavest me,
Hróð-gár leófa,	Hróthgár dear,
Hige-láce on-send :	to Higelác send :

(1) Snotor *prudent* ; definite form, se being understood.

(2) Gold- implies *splendour, munificence* ; wine (II. 2.) *friend* forms part of many proper names : Trum-wine, Eád-wine, *Edwin*, &c.

(3) Stæl (II. 2.) hence *stall* ; G. *stelle*.

(4) Mund (II. 3.) *protection* ; forming part of several proper names ; as O's-mund, Sigemund (G. Siegmund) *Sigismund*, &c. : bora (from *beran*) *one who bears* ; the second part of several compounds.

(5) Lit. *hand-comrades* ; ge-sel (II. 2.) G. ge-selle.

(6) Máððum, máðm, mádm *treasure, gift*.

mæg þonne on þám golde on-gitan	may then by the gold understand
Geáta dryhten, ge-seón sunu Hredles	<i>the</i> lord of the Geáts, Hrethl's son see
þonne he on þæt sinc starað,	when he at the treasure stareth,
þæt ic gum-cystum <sup>(1)</sup> gódne funde	that I in <i>his</i> munificence found a good
beága <sup>(2)</sup> bryttan ; breác þonne móste.	distributor of rings ; <i>I</i> enjoyed <i>it</i> while <i>I</i> might.
And þú Hun-ferð læt	And do thou let Hun- ferth
ealde láfe <sup>(3)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> old bequest,
wræt-líc <sup>(4)</sup> wæg-sweord <sup>(5)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> ornamented wave- sword,
wíd-cúðne man, heard-ecg <sup>(6)</sup> habban.	<i>the</i> wide-known man, <i>the</i> hard-edged have.
Ic me mid Hruntinge <sup>(7)</sup> dóm ge-wyrce,	I me with Hrunting glory will work,
oððe mec deáð nimeð.	or me death shall take.
Æfter þæm wordum	After those words

(1) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence, the best of a thing* ; from ceósan.

(2) Beáh (II. 2.) *ring* ; F. bague : from beógan, búgan *to bow, bend*. Rings whether for the arm (earm-beáh), or neck (heals-beáh), were usual gifts from an A. S. or Scandinavian chief or prince to his followers.

(3) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, relic, heir-loom*, as swords often were.

(4) Wræt *embossed or carved ornament*.

(5) Wæg (II. 3.) *wave* ; G. woge, F. vague : *adorned with wavy lines* as blades still are.

(6) Ecg (II. 3.) *edge* ; G. ecke.

(7) Hrunting was the name of Beówulf's famous sword.

Weder-Geáta leód	<i>the Weder-Geáts' prince</i>
éfste mid elne <sup>(1)</sup> ,	hastened with boldness,
ná-læs and-sware	nor answer
bídan wolde :	would bide :
brim-wylm on-feng	<i>the ocean-tide received</i>
hilde-rince <sup>(2)</sup> .	<i>the man of war.</i>

Part of Canto XXVII.<sup>(3)</sup>

Cwom <sup>(4)</sup> þá tó flóde	Came then to <i>the flood</i>
fela módigra	many proud
hæg-stealdra <sup>(5)</sup> ,	bachelors,
hring-net <sup>(6)</sup> bæron,	<i>who ring-nets bore,</i>
locene leoðo-syrca <sup>(8)</sup> .	locked limb-shirts.
Land-weard on-fand	<i>The land-guard found out</i>
eft-síð eorla,	<i>the return of the warriors,</i>
swá he ær dyde ;	as he ere had done ;
nó he mid hearme	not with insult did he
of hliðes <sup>(8)</sup> nosan <sup>(9)</sup>	from <i>the cape's point</i>
gæstas ne grétte,	<i>the guests greet,</i>
ac him tó-geanes ráð ;	but to meet them rode ;

(1) Ellen (II. 1.) *courage, valour.*(2) Rinc (II. 2.) *man, warrior.*

(3) Line 3772—3835.

(4) Fela usually governs a genitive plural, while the verb often stands in the singular.

(5) Hæg-steald (II. 2.) G. hage-stolz ; the genitive plural in -ra seems to show that this word was originally a participle past ; and " hæg-steald mon" occurs.

(6) Another allusion to the *rings* of their mail.

(7) Lið, leoð (III. 1.) G. ghed, D. lid.

(8) Hlið (II. 1.) *lid, covering, cliff.*

(9) Nose I. 3.



cwæð þæt wil-cuman Wedera leódum,	quoth that welcome to <i>the</i> people of <i>the</i> Wed- ers,
scalcas <sup>(1)</sup> on scír-hame <sup>(2)</sup> tó scipe fóron.	men in bright mail to <i>their</i> ship went.
þá wæs on sande sæ-geáp naca <sup>(3)</sup> hladen here-wædum, hringed stefna <sup>(4)</sup> , mærum and máðmum; mæst hlifade ofer Hróð-gáres hord-ge-streónum <sup>(5)</sup> : he þám bát-wearde <sup>(6)</sup> bunden golde swurd ge-sealde, þæt he síð-þán wæs on meodu-bence <sup>(7)</sup> máðma þý weorðre, yrfe-láfe. Ge-wát him on nacan	There was on <i>the</i> sand <i>the</i> sea-curved bark laden with war-weeds, <i>the</i> ringed vessel, with horses and gifts; <i>the</i> mast lifted itself over Hróthgár's hoarded treasures: he to the boat-ward bound with gold <i>a</i> sword gave, so that he afterwards was on <i>the</i> mead-bench for <i>the</i> gifts the worthier, <i>the</i> heir-loom. <i>He</i> departed in <i>the</i> ship

(1) Scealc, scalc *man, servant* &c.; G. schalk *rogue*. Mearh-scealc *officer* &c. *having the care of the horses* (mearh *horse*); hence *mar-shal*.

(2) Ham (hama) *covering, here armour*.

(3) Comp. G. nachen, F. nacelle.

(4) Stefn (stemn) (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; stefna *ship having a stem: ship with the stem adorned with rings*.

(5) Hord (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure*; ge-streón (II. 3.) *acquisition, wealth* &c.; streónan, strýnan *to acquire, get, beget*; hence *strain, breed*.

(6) Bát (II. 1.) G. boot.

(7) Meodo, medo (-u) (III. 2.) G. meth, D. meede.

dréfan deóp wæter ;	to urge <i>the</i> deep water ;
Dena land of-geaf :	the Danes' land <i>he</i> left :
þá wæs be mæste	there was by <i>the</i> mast
mere-hræglā sum,	a certain sea-vest,
segl <sup>(1)</sup> sále-fæst <sup>(2)</sup> ;	a sail fast by <i>a</i> rope ;
sund-wudu <sup>(3)</sup> þunede <sup>(4)</sup> ;	the sea-wood thundered ;
nó þær wæg-flotan <sup>(5)</sup>	not there <i>the</i> wave-floater
	did
wind ofer ýðum	<i>the</i> wind over <i>the</i> billows
síðes ge-twáfde <sup>(6)</sup> ;	from <i>its</i> course hinder ;
sæ-genga fór,	<i>the</i> sea-goer went,
fleát fámig-heals <sup>(7)</sup>	floated <i>the</i> foamy-necked
ford̄ ofer ýðe,	forth over <i>the</i> wave,
bunden <sup>(8)</sup> stefna	<i>the</i> bounden ship
ofer brim-streámas,	over <i>the</i> ocean-streams,
þæt hie Geáta clifu <sup>(9)</sup>	so that they <i>the</i> Geats'
	cliffs
on-gitan meahton,	could make out,
cúðe næssas <sup>(10)</sup> .	<i>the</i> known headlands.

(1) Segel (II. 2.) G. segel.

(2) Sál (II. 2.) *string*, &c. G. seil ; hence sálan below to *bind*, *make fast*.

(3) From sund, comes *sound* (*strait*) G. sund.

(4) Þunian ; comp. L. tonare ; þunor (II. 2.) *thunder* ; L. tonitru, G. donner, D. donder. Hence Þór *Thor*, the *thunderer*, (Jupiter) Tonans.

(5) Flota *floater*, *ship*, *sailor* ; from fleótan (III. 3.) to *float*, *fleet* ; F. flotter.

(6) Ge-twáfān to *divide*, &c. ; from twá.

(7) Heals (II. 2.) *neck* ; G. hals.

(8) With ornaments *bound* or *wound* round the prow.

(9) Clif (III. 1.) *rock*, *cliff* ; L. clivus, G. klippe, D. klip.

(10) Næs *nose*, *promontory* ; L. nasus, G. nase : hence *-ness* in *Dungeness* and the like.

Ceól<sup>(1)</sup> úp-ge-sprang  
 lyft-ge-swenced<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 on lande stód.  
 Hraðe wæs æt holme  
 hýð-weard<sup>(3)</sup> geara,  
 se-þe ár lange tíð  
 leófra manna,  
 fús æt faroðe,  
 fær wlátode :  
 sælde tó sande  
 síð-fæðme<sup>(4)</sup> scip  
 oncer-bendum<sup>(5)</sup> fæst,  
 þý-læs hine ýð-þrym,  
 wudu wynsuman,  
 for-wrecan<sup>(6)</sup> meahte.

*The* ship up-sprang  
 air-compelled,  
 on *the* land stood.  
 Quickly was at *the* sea  
*the* shore-guard ready,  
 who long time ere  
*the* dear men's,  
 ready at *the* strand,  
 journey had watched :  
*he* tied to *the* sand  
*the* wide-bosomed ship  
 with anchor-bands fast,  
 lest it *the* force of *the*  
                   waves,  
*the* winsome wood,  
 might damage.

(<sup>1</sup>) Ceól (II. 2.) *keel, vessel* (= L. *carina*) G. *kiel*: vessels called *keels* are still in use on the Humber.

(<sup>2</sup>) Lyft (II. 3.) G. *luft*, O. *lift*; *swencan to drive, urge*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Hýð (II. 3.) *haven, &c.*; hence *-hythe* in *Queen-hythe, &c.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Fæðm II. 2.

(<sup>5</sup>) Oncer, ancer (II. 2.) G. *anker*.

(<sup>6</sup>) For-wrecan (II. 1.) *to banish, injure, &c.* hence *to wreck*.

## APPENDIX.

1.—*Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning.*

\*.\* This list, in addition to what is stated at p. 2, will prove the great importance of attention to the quantity of A. S. vowels, if only as a mean of distinguishing words otherwise of the same aspect, but in truth differing in every respect but spelling. Other spellings, by which some of the words may be further known from each other, are given between brackets.

Ac (ah) *but*.

ác (II. 3.) *oak*; G. eiche, D. eik.

a-gán *a-gone, a-go*.

ágan (anom.) *to own, possess, have*.

a-gen<sup>(1)</sup> (a-(on-)gean) *a-gain, a-gainst*; G. gegen, D. te-gen.

ágen *own*; G. and D. eigen.

an (on) *on, in*; év, L. ĩn, G. an, D. aan<sup>(2)</sup>.

an (ann) (*I*) *grant*, from unnan.

(1) P. *agen* or *agin*.

(2) The Dutch sometimes, as here, has lengthened a short vowel; on the whole however it will perhaps be found as safe a guide to the A. S. quantity as any modern language can be. In D. a double vowel or diphthong, in G. a diphthong, a vowel with h before or after it, or a double vowel, in general answers to an A. S. long vowel.

- án *one, a* ; G. ein, D. een : L. ūn-us, εἷς<sup>(1)</sup>.  
 ar (II. 2.) *messenger*.  
 ár (II. 3.) *honour* ; G. ehre, D. eer.  
 aras ; plur. of ar.  
 a-rás *a-rose*, from a-rísan.  
 ædre *instantly, forthwith*.  
 áedre (I. 3.) *vein* ; G. and D. ader.  
 æl (II. 2.) *awl* ; G. ahl, D. els.  
 æl (II. 2.) *eel* ; G. and D. aal.  
 ban (ge-bann) (II. 2.) *ban, edict* ; G. bann, D. ban.  
 bán (II. 1.) *bone* ; G. bein, D. been.  
 bær (II.) *bare* ; G. bar.  
 bær (*I*) *bare* ; G. (ge-)bar.  
 bær (II. 3.) *bier* ; G. bahre, D. baar.  
 ben (benn) (II. 3.) *wound*.  
 bén (II. 3.) *prayer*.  
 blæd (II. 2.) *fruit* ; G. blatt, D. blad (*leaf, blade*.)  
 blæd (II. 3.) *blast* ; G. blasen.  
 brid (bridd) (II. 2.) (*young*) *bird*.  
 bríd (brýd) (II. 3.) *bride* ; G. braut, D. brijd.  
 bude ; 2nd pers. imperf. of beódan *to bid*.  
 búde ; imperf. of búan *to cultivate*, &c. G. baute.  
 cneow (III. 1.) *knee* ; G. and D. knie.  
 cneów (*I*) *knew*.  
 coc (cocc) (II. 2.) *cock*.  
 cóc (II. 2.) *cook*.  
 feol<sup>(2)</sup> (feoll) (*I*) *fell* ; G. fiel.

(<sup>1</sup>) Here and often else, the *ν* has evidently been dropped before *σ* ; it appears in the neut. *έν*, and in the oblique cases *ένοσ*, &c. See Additions, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) Quantity doubtful ; if long, both words should be shifted to II. below.

feól (fýl) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.<sup>(1)</sup>

floc (flocc) (II. 2.) *flock (of sheep &c.)*

floc (flocc) (II. 3.) *flock (of wool &c.)*; G. flocke, D. vlok.

floc (II. 3.) *flook, (flat-fish, of an anchor.)*

for- (prefix) *for-*; G. ver-.

for *for*; G. für, D. voor.

fór (II. 3.) *going, journey.*

fór; imperf. of faran; G. fuhr, D. voer.

fore *be-fore*; G. vor, D. voor, l. pro, προ.

fóre; 2nd pers. imperf. of faran.

ful (full) (II. 1.) *cup.*

ful (full) *full*; G. voll, D. vol.

fúl *foul*; G. faul, D. vuil.

fyl (fyll) (II. 2.) *felling, slaughter.*

fyl (fyll) (II. 3.) *fill, glut*; G. fülle.

fýl (feól) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.

fyr *further.*

fýr (II. 1.) *fire*; G. feuer, D. vuur: πῦρ.

geat (III. 1.) *gate*; D. gat *hole, opening.*

geát; imperf. of geótan *to pour*; G. goss, D. goot.

geoc (II. 1.) *yoke*; G. joch, D. juk, L. jūgum, ζύγον.

geóc (II. 3.) *consolation.*

geong *young*; G. jung, D. jong.

geóng; imperf. of gán; G. gieng.

God (II. 2.) *God*; G. Gott, D. God.

gód *good*; G. gut, D. goed.

heaf (III. 1.) *ocean, deep*; G. haf-en, D. hav-en *hav-en*,  
F. hav-re.

heáf (heóf) (II. 2.) *grief.*

(1) D. v is = f.

- ham *ham* ; D. ham.
- ham (hama) (II. 2.) *covering, skin.*
- hám<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *home, dwelling* ; G. heim, D. heem.
- hama (homa, ham) ; see above.
- háma *grasshopper.*
- hig (II. 1.) *hay* ; G. heu.
- hig *hey! oh!*
- híg (hí) *they* : oí, L. ei, ii.
- hof (II. 2.) *court, dwelling* ; G. and D. hof.
- hóf (*I*) *hove* ; G. hub, D. hief.
- hwæte *eager, brave.*
- hwæte (II. 2.) *wheat* ; G. weizen, D. weit.
- hyrde (II. 2.) *herd* ; G. hirt.
- hýrde (*I*) *heard* ; G. hörte.
- hyre (hire) *her* ; G. ihr.
- hýre (heóre) *gentle, mild* ; G. (un-ge-)heuer.
- is *is* ; G. ist, D. is : ἐστι, L. est.
- ís (II. 1.) *ice* ; G. eis, D. ijs.
- lam *lame* ; G. lahm, D. lam.
- lám (II. 2.) *loam* ; G. lehm, D. leem.
- leođ (liđ) (III. 1.) *limb* ; G. glied, D. lid.
- leóđ (II. 1.) *lay, song* ; G. and D. lied.
- lim (III. 1.) *limb.*
- lím (II. 2.) *lime, s-lime*<sup>(2)</sup> ; G. (sch-)leim, D. (s-)lijm.
- man (mann) (III. 2.) *man* ; G. mann, D. man.
- mán (II. 1.) *sin, crime* ; comp. G. mein-eid, D. mijn-eed  
*perjury, and our man-sworn.*

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *ham-let*, and *ham (hamp-)* in local names ; comp. G. Blindheim, D. Gorinc-hem &c.

<sup>(2)</sup> See p. 105, n. 9.

- mæst (II. 2.) *mast* ; G. mast.  
 mæst *most* ; G. meist, D. meest.  
 men (menn) *men* ; G. männer.  
 mén *necklace*, &c. L. mon-ile.  
 metan (II. 1.) *to mete, measure* ; G. messen, D. meeten.  
 metan (I. 2.) *to paint*.  
 métan (I. 2.) *to meet* ; D. moeten.  
 ne *not*, O. *ne* ; L. and F. *ne*.  
 né (for ne-ge) *nor* ; L. nec, G. noch, F. ni.  
 nið (II. 2.) *man, warrior*.  
 níð (II. 2.) *envy, malice* ; G. neid.  
 sæd *sated*, hence *sad* ; G. satt: comp. L. sāt-is *enough*.  
 sæd (ge-sæd, -sægd) *said* ; G. ge-sagt.  
 sæd (II. 1.) *seed* ; G. saat, D. zaad<sup>(1)</sup>.  
 sæl (sel, sal, sele) *hall* ; G. saal, F. salle : αὐλή.  
 sæl (II. 2.) *time*.  
 sæl (sél) *good, excellent*.  
 spræc (I) *spake* ; G. sprach, D. sprach.  
 spræc (II. 3.) *speech* ; G. sprache, D. spraak.  
 syn (synn) (II. 3.) *sin* ; G. sünde, D. zonde.  
 sýn (seón) (II. 3.) *sight*.  
 sýn (sín) *his*, &c. ; G. sein, D. zijn.  
 to- (prefix) G. zer-<sup>(2)</sup>.  
 tó *to* ; G. zu, D. te, toe, tot.  
 tó *too* ; G. zu, D. te.  
 tol (toll) (II. 1.) *toll* ; G. zoll, D. tol.  
 tól (II. 1.) *tool*.  
 uton *let us—* ; L. utin-am ?

(1) D. z often answers to A. S., E. and G. s.

(2) G. z (= ts) answers to A. S., E., and D. t.



úton *without*; G. aussen, D. b-uiten.

wæg (II. 3.) *dish, wey, weight, balance*; G. wage, D. waag.

wæg (II. 2.) *wave*; G. woge, F. vague.

wende (I) *turned went*; G. wandte, D. wende.

wénde (I) *weened*; G. währte, D. waande.

werig *spiteful*.

wérig *weary*.

westan *from the west*.

wéstan (I. 2.) *to waste, ravage*; G. ver-wüsten.

win (ge-winn) (II. 2.) *war, labour, gain*; G. ge-winn.

win (wyn) (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. wonne.

wín (II. 1.) *wine*; G. wein, D. wijn: οἶν-ος, L. vīn-um.

þa *the &c.*; G. die, D. de: τᾶ.

þá *then, when*; G. da.

þara (þar, þær) *there*; G. dar.

þára (þæra) *of the &c.*; G. der.

II.—*Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning.*

Aldor (ealdor) <sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *chief, prince*; hence aldor-man.

aldor (ealdor) (II. 2.) *life*.

ǽr (II. 1.) *brass*; G. eher, erz, L. æs, ær-is.

ǽr *ere*; G. eher, D. eer.

ǽt (II. 2.) *food, eating*.

ǽt (I) *ate*; G. ass, D. at.

ǽt *at*; L. ad.

(1) The A. S. has a tendency to insert e ( y) before a: hence the frequent modern pronunciation of *kyart* for *cart* and the like.

bát (II. 1.) *boat*; G. boot.

bát (*I*) *bit*; G. biss, D. beet.

beáh (II. 2.) *ring*; F. bague.

beáh; imperf. of búgan *to bow, bend*; G. biege, D. boog.

beó (I. 3.) *bee*; G. biene, D. bij.

beó (*I*) *be*; G. bin, D. ben.

beón *bees*.

beón *to be*.

bere (II. 2.) *bere, bar-ley*.

bere (*I*) *bear*.

bil (II. 1.) *bill, faulchion*; G. beil, D. bijl.

bil *bill, beak*.

blác *pale, bleak, hence black*; G. bleich, D. bleek.

blác; imperf. of blícan *to shine, blink*; G. blinken.

bóc (III. 3.) *book*; G. buch, D. boek.

bóc; imperf. of bacan *to bake*; D. biek.

byre (II. 2.) *son, child*.

byre (II. 2.) *event, time*.

byrne (I. 3.) *corslet*, O. birnie.

birne (*I*) *burn* (neut.) G. brenne.

cin (cinn) (II. 1.) *chin*, G. kinn.

cin (cynn) (II. 1.) *kin, race*.

cyst (cist) (II. 3.) *chest*; P. kist, G. kiste, D. kist.

cyst (II. 3.) *choice*; D. keus.

cyst; 3rd pers. pres. of cyssan *to kiss*; G. küsst.

deór (II. 1.) *animal, deer*; G. thier, D. dier.

deór (dýr) *dear*; G. theuer, D. duur.

ealdor; see aldor above.

earn (II. 2.) *arm*; G. arm, L. arm-us.

earn *poor*; G. arm.

éce (II. 2.) *ache*.

éce *eternal*.

fáh *hostile*; hence *foe*.

fáh *variegated, stained, discoloured*.

fær (II. 2.) *stratagem*.

fær (II. 3.) *carriage, going*; hence *fare*.

fæsten (III. 1.) *fastness*; G. feste.

fæsten (II. 1.) *fast*; G. fasten.

fæt (III. 1.) *vat, fat*; L. vas, G. fass, D. vat.

fæt *fat*; G. fett, D. vet.

from (fromm) *bold, pious*; G. fromm.

from (fram) *from*.

fyllan (II. 2.) *to fill*; G. füllen, D. vullen.

fyllan (II. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.

fyrst (first) (II. 3.) *period, space of time*; G. frist.

fyrst (fyrmost) *first, chief*; G. fürst.

ge *ye*; D. gj.

ge *both &c.*

gif *if*, O. *gif*; G. ob.

gif *give*; G. gieb.

git (gyt, get, iet) *yet*.

git (gyt) *ye two*.

healt *halt, lame*.

healt (hylt, healdeð) *holdeth*.

hrán (hrón) (II. 2.) *whale*.

hrán; imperf. of hrínan *to touch*.

hund (II. 2.) *hound, dog*; G. hund, D. hond.

hund (II. 1.) *hundred &c.*; D. hond.

hylt (hilt) (II. 1.) *hilt*.

hylt = healt, healdeð; (see above) G. hält.

hyrst<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *forest*.

hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament*.

in (inn) (II. 1.) *dwelling, inn*.

in (on) *in*; ðv, G. and L. *in*.

leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. *laub*, D. *loof*.

leáf (II. 2.) *leave*; G. *ur-laub*, D. *ver-lof*<sup>(2)</sup>.

leán (II. 1.) *reward*; G. *lohn*, D. *loon*.

leán (II. 3.) *to reproach, blame*.

leás *false, loose*; G. *loos*, L. *lax-us*.

leás; imperf. of leósan *to lose*.

list (lyst, lust) (II. 2.) *lust, desire, pleasure*; G. *lust*.

list (II. 3.) *craft*; G. *list*.

lið (leoð) (III. 1.) *limb*; G. *glied*, D. *lid*.

lið *fleet, navy*.

lið (licgeð) (*he*) *lieth*; G. *liegt*.

mæg (II. 2.) *son, kin's-man*; D. *maag*.

mæg (*I*) *may*; G. and D. *mag*.

mægð (II. 3.) *maid*; G. *magd*, *maid*, D. *meid*.

mægð (II. 3.) *tribe, kindred, generation*.

mæł (II. 3.) *time &c.* G. *mahl*, D. *maal*.

mæł (III. 1.) *spot*; G. *mahl*, D. *maal*.

mæł *picture, image*.

mænan (I. 2.) *to mean*; G. *meinen*, D. *meenen*.

mænan (I. 2.) *to moan*.

mearh (mear)<sup>(3)</sup> (II. 2.) *horse*.

mearh (mearg) (II. 3.) *marrow*; G. *mark*, D. *merg*.

(1) Hence *Hurst*, *Lynd-hurst* &c.; comp. G. *Delmen-horst* &c.

(2) Hence *fur-lough*; or there may have been an A. S. *for-leáf*.

(3) There are traces of the E. masc. *mare* in local names and old sayings; *night-mare* and G. *nacht-mahr* are properly masc. answering to L. *incubus*, *incubo*; G. *mähre mare*, answers to A. S. *myre*, D. *merrie*.

- mót (ge-mót) (II. 1.) *mote, meeting*.
- mót (*I*) *must, may*; G. muss, D. moet.
- næs (nose) (II. 2.) *nose, ness, headland*; G. nase, D. neus, L. nas-us.
- næs (ne wæs) *was not*.
- næs (nas) *not*.
- neát (II. 1.) *neat, nout, ox*.
- neát; imperf. of neótan *to use*.
- nest (II. 1.) *nest*; G. nest.
- nest (nist, nyst) (II. 3.) *food, provision*.
- ofer (ufor) (II. 2.) *shore, bank*; G. ufer, D. oever.
- ofer *over*; ὑπερ, L. super, G. über, D. over.
- oððe *or*, O. *other*; G. oder, L. aut.
- oððe (for oð-þæt) *until*.
- rædan (I. 2.) *to read, guess*; G. er-rathen, D. raaden.
- rædan (I. 2.) *to rede, advise*; G. rathen, D. raaden.
- ríce (III. 1.) *realm, empire*; G. reich, D. rijk.
- ríce *powerful, rich*; G. reich, D. rijk.
- sæc (II. 2.) *sack*; σακκος, L. saccus, G. sack, D. zak.
- sæc (II. 3.) *war, battle*.
- sǽl (II. 2.) *time, occasion*.
- sǽl (sél) *good*.
- sceaft (II. 2.) *shaft, spear*; G. schaft.
- sceaft (ge-sceaft) (II. 3.) *creature, creation*.
- scír (II. 3.) *shire, division*.
- scír *bright, clear, sheer*; G. schier.
- scyld (scild) (II. 2.) *shield*; G. schild.
- scyld (II. 3.) *debt &c.*; G. schuld.
- segen (II. 2.) *sign, ensign*; L. signum.
- segen (II. 3.) *saw, saying*; G. sage.

seld (II. 1.) *seat, throne.*

seld (seldan) *seldom*; G. selten, D. zelden.

seó *sight, pupil of the eye.*

seó *she*; G. sie, D. zij: ŋ, L. ea.

síde (I. 3.) *side*; G. seite, D. zijde.

síde (I. 3.) *silk*; G. seide, D. zijde.

síde *widely.*

síd (II. 2.) *time, journey &c.*

síd *late.*

síd *since*, O. *sith*; G. seit.

slege (slecge) (II. 2.) *sledge (hammer).*

slege (III. 1.) *slaying.*

span (II. 3.) *span*; G. spanne, D. span.

span (*I*) *span*; G. spann.

stefn (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; G. steven, D. steeven.

stefn (stemn) (II. 3.) *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

stician *to stick, stab*; G. stechen }  
 stician *to stick, cleave*; G. stecken } D. steeken.

treówe<sup>(1)</sup> (trýwe) *true, faithful*; G. treu, D. trouw.

treówe (trýwe, treówđ) (I. 3.) *truth, troth, faith*; G.  
 treue, D. trouw.

tyn (tin) (II. 1.) *tin*; G. zinn, D. tin, L. s-tannum.

tyn (tyne)<sup>(2)</sup> *ten*; G. zehn, D. tien.

wan (won) *dark, dusky*; hence *wan*.

(1) Treówe (adj.) and treówe or treówđ (noun) with the G. and D. synonyms, never have the modern sense of our *true, truth*, L. *verus, veritas*, G. *wahr, wahrheit*, D. *waar, waarheid*; these are in A. S. sóđ and sóđ-fæstnis: sóđ-fæst (used chiefly of persons) conveys both notions, as also that of *justice, veracity*—"honest and true." It need hardly be added that anyhow *Truth* is neither in word nor in deed "that which one *troweth*."

(2) Tyne seems rarely used except absolutely; see p. 34.

- wan (wann) (*I*) *won*; G. ge-wann.
- weal<sup>(1)</sup> (wealh, wala) (II. 2.) *Gael, Celt, stranger, one not of Gothic race.*
- weal (weall) (II. 2.) *wall*; G. wall.
- weard (II. 2.) *ward-en, guard-ian, keeper.*
- weard (II. 3.) *ward, guard, keeping.*
- wel (well, wyll) (II. 3.) *well, spring*; G. quelle, D. wel.
- wel *well*; G. wohl, D. wel.
- weorðe (wyrðe) *worth, worthy*; G. werth, würdig.
- weorðe (wurðe) from weorðan; G. werde, D. worde.
- wit (ge-witt) III. 1. *wit, sense*; G. witz.
- wit (wyt) *we two.*
- wítan (anom.) *to know*; O. wit, wis, wot; G. wissen, D. weeten.
- wítan <sup>(2)</sup> *to punish, blame*; O. wite, D. wijten.
- wód *wood, mad.*
- wód imperf. of wadan *to go, wade*; L. vadere.
- wráð (II. 3.) *wreath.*
- wráð *wroth.*
- wyllan (welan, weallan) (II. 2.) *to boil*; G. wallen.
- wyllan (willan) *to will*; G. wollen, L. velle.
- þanc (II. 2.) *thank*; G. dank.
- þanc (ge-þanc) (II. 2.) *thought*; G. ge-danke, D. ge-dagte.
- þe *that, which.*
- þe *or.*
- þe *than.*

(1) Hence *Wal-es, Corn-wall, Wall-oon, wal-nut* (P. *welsh-nut*) G. *wall-nuss* (*wälsche-nuss*) *wall-fahrt* *foreign journey, pilgrimage* &c. See p. 113. n. 3.

(2) From *æt-wítan, ed-wítan* comes *t-wit*.

þe *thee* ; Dor. τε, L. te, G. dich.

þeáh *though* ; G. doch.

þeáh (þáh) imperf. of þeón *to thrive* ; G. ge-dieg.

### III.—Other words likely to be confounded by learners.

Æl- for eal ; as æl-mihtig *almighty*.

æl- (el-) ; as, æl-þeódig *foreign*.

beran (II. 1.) *to bear*.

berian <sup>(1)</sup> *to bare*.

birnan <sup>(2)</sup> (byrnan) (III. 1.) *to burn*, (neut.) G. brennen

bærnan (bernan) (I. 2.) *to burn*, (act.) G. brennen.

búgan (beógan) (III. 3.) *to bow, bend*, (neut.) G. biegen,

D. buigen.

bígan (I. 2.) *to bow, bend*, (act.)

búgian (= búan) *to inhabit &c.*

cleófan (clúfan) (III. 3.) *to cleave, split* ; G. klieben, D.

klieden, klooven.

clifian *to cleave, stick* ; G. kleben, D. kleeven.

cunnan (anom.) *to know, be able*.

cunnian *to try, tempt, attempt*.

(<sup>1</sup>) The conjugation of verbs in -ian is not marked here or in the later notes above, as they can only be I. 1.

(<sup>2</sup>) Here and in the other instances below the neuter verb is complex, conj. II. or III., while the active is simple, conj. I., usually I. 2. ; the latter is commonly formed from the imperf. of the former ; as, birne, barn ; bærnian, and the like : the E., G., and D. synonyms on the whole answer closely to the A. S. *Fall for fell, lay for lie, set for sit* are as wrong as *drink for drench, or drench for drink* would be. Comp. L. pendēre *to hang*, (neut.) pendere *to hang* (act.) &c.



- cwelan (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.  
 cwellan (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. *quälen to vex &c.*  
 denn (II. 1.) *den*.  
 denu (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.  
 drincan (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. *trinken, D. trinken*.  
 drencan (I. 2.) *to drench, drown (act.)*; G. *trän'ken, D. drenken*.  
 a-drincan (III. 1.) *to drown (neut.)*; G. *er-trinken, D. ver-drinken*.  
 faran (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. *fahren, D. vaaren*.  
 feran (I. 2.) }  
 ferian *to convey, carry, also go*; G. *führen, D. voeren*.  
 feallan (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. *fallen, D. vallen*.  
 fyllan (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. *fällen, D. vellen*.  
 fleógan (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.  
 fligan (a-fligan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.  
 fúlian *to rot, grow foul*; G. *ver-faulen*.  
 fullian *to baptise*.  
 gréetan (greótan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. *krijten*.  
 gréetan (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. *grüssen, D. groeten*.  
 hangian *to hang (neut.)*; G. *hangen*.  
 hangan (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang (act.)*; G. *hängen*.  
 hátan (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. *heissen, D. heeten*.  
 hatian *to hate*; G. *hassen, D. haaten*.  
 hæbban (habban) *to have*; G. *haben, D. hebben*.  
 hebban (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. *heben, D. heffen*.  
 heort (heorot) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. *hirsch, D. hert*.  
 heorte (I. 3.) *heart*; G. *herz, D. hart*.  
 hlast (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.  
 hlæst (II. 1.) *last, load*; G. *last*.

hnígan (III. 2.) *to stoop*; D. nijgen, G. neigen (act.)

hnágan (I. 2.) *to make stoop.*

hrím *rime, frost.*

rím (II. 2.) *rime, number*; G. reim, D. rijm.

hýran (I. 2.) *to hear*; G. hören, D. hoeren.

hýr an *to hire*; G. heuern, D. huuren.

herian *to praise.*

hergian *to harry, ravage*; G. ver-heeren.

inc *you two.*

inca <sup>(1)</sup> *ill-will.*

irnan (yrnan) (III. 1.) *to run*; G. rinnen, D. rennen.

ærnan (ernan) (I. 2.) *to let run.*

lág (II. 3.) *law*; L. lex, lēg-is.

lagu (III. 3.) *water*; comp. L. lac-us, G. lache *lake* &c.

leán (II. 2.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

læn (II. 1.) *loan*; G. lehen.

leom (lim) (III. 1.) *limb.*

leóma *light*; L. lūm-en.

leósan (III. 3.) *to lose*; G. ver-lieren, D. ver-liezen.

losian *to be lost, escape from, perish.*

lýsan (a-lýsan) (I. 2.) *to loose, re-lease, re-deem*; G. er-lösen.

letan (lettan) (I. 2.) *to let, hinder.*

lætán (II. 2.) *to let, leave*; G. lassen, D. laten.

liccian *to lick*; λειχεν, L. lingere, G. lecken, D. lekken.

lícian *to please, like.*

licgan (II. 1.) *to lie*; G. liegen, D. liggen.

lecgan (I. 3.) *to lay*; G. legen, D. leggen.

(1) The declension of nouns in -a here, and in the later notes to the Ex-tracts, is not marked, as they can be only I. 1.

- be-lífan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.  
 láfán (I. 2.) *to leave, make remain*.  
 a-lýfan (lýfan) (I. 2.) *to allow*; G. er-lauben, F. al-  
 louer.  
 ge-lýfan (I. 2.) *to believe*; G. g-lauben, D. ge-looven.  
 lídan (III. 2.) *to go, voyage*.  
 lédan (I. 2.) *to lead, make go*; G. leiten, D. leiden.  
 locc (II. 2.) *lock (of hair &c.)*; D. lok.  
 loca *locker, fold, place locked or shut up*.  
 locu (III. 2.) *lock, fastening*; also *locker &c*.  
 lutian *to lurk*; L. lät-ere.  
 lútan (leótan) (III. 3.) *to lout, bow*.  
 máed (II. 1.) *math, mead*; G. mahd, matte.  
 méd (II. 3.) *meed, reward*.  
 medo (-u, meodo) (III. 2.) *mead*; G. meth, D. meede.  
 mæg (mæcg, mecg) (II. 2. plur. magas) *son, kin's-man*.  
 mág (II. 2. plur. mágas) } *kin's-man*; D. maag.  
 maga (plur. magan) }  
 mæge (I. 3.) *kin's-woman*.  
 metan }  
 métan } See I. above.  
 mætan (I. 2.) *to paint*.  
 múđ (II. 2.) *mouth (of an animal)*; G. mund, D.  
 mond.  
 múđa *mouth (of a river)*; G. münd-ung.  
 a-rísan (III. 2.) *to a-rise*; D. rijzen.  
 a-ráran (I. 2.) *to rear*.  
 sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. sähen, D. zaaijen.  
 seówian (sýwian) *to sew*.

- sincan (III. 1.) *to sink* (neut.); G. sinken, D. zinken.  
 sencan (I. 2.) *to sink* (act.); G. senken, D. zenken.  
 sittan (II. 1.) *to sit*; G. sitzen, D. zitzen.  
 settan (I. 2.) *to set*; G. setzen, D. zetzen.  
 sígan (III. 2.) *to sink, fall down*.  
 sægan (I. 2.) *to throw down, subdue*.  
 springan (III. 1.) *to spring, burst* (neut.); G. springen.  
 sprengan (I. 2.) *to spring, burst* (act.); G. sprengen. <sup>(1)</sup>  
 swefan (II. 1.) *to sleep*.  
 swebban *to put to sleep*.  
 swefnian *to dream*.  
 swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.  
 swencan (I. 2.) *to make labour, oppress*.  
 swindan (III. 1.) *to vanish*; G. schwinden.  
 swendan (I. 2.) *to make vanish, dissipate*; G. ver-  
 schwenden.  
 treów (III. 1.) *tree*.  
 treówe (trýwe) *true, truth*; see II. above.  
 wacan (II. 3.) (wacian) *to wake, watch* (neut.); G.  
 wachen, D. waaken.  
 weccan (I. 2.) *to wake* (act.); G. wecken, D. wekken.  
 weder (II. 1.) *weather*; G. wetter, D. weder.  
 weðer (II. 2.) *wether*; G. widder.  
 wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling*; οἰκ-ος: see p. 103, n. 12.  
 wicg (II. 1.) *horse*.  
 wíg (II. 2.) *war*.  
 windan (III. 1.) *to wind, turn* (neut.); G. and D. winden.  
 wendan (I. 3.) *to turn* (act.), *wend, go*; G. and D.  
 wenden.

<sup>(1)</sup> *To spring (a mine), blow up or open.*

wíse (I. 3.) *wise, manner*; G. *weise*, D. *wijze*.

wísa *wise man, guide*; G. *weiser*, D. *wijzer*.

wítan (anom.) *to know &c.*: see I. above.

ge-wítan *to depart*.

wítian *to decide*.

wíte (III. 1.) *punishment*; O. *wite*.

wíta *counsellor*; hence *witena-ge-mót parliament*.

wræð *wrath, anger*.

wráð *wroth, angry*.

þincan (I. 3.) *to seem*; G. *dünken*, D. *dunken*.

þencan (I. 3.) *to think, make seem to one-self*; G. and  
D. *denken*. <sup>(1)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Comp. *δοκεω I think, seem, δοκει μοι me-thinks*.

IV.—*Additional Notes.*

Page 1.—Æ is not a diphthong, but a modification of a in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by e; thus dæg, dæge, but plur. dagas, dagum; so also fæt, sæd, &c. : é answering to Goth. é, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote ı without a dot, ý with one.

Þ probably gave rise to the O. abbreviations ye for *the* (þe), yt for *that* (þt), &c.

Page 2.—t̃ was also written for oðð|e or, sóðt̃ for sóð-lice *truly, verily*. Examples of the use of ñ are þā for þám *to the* &c., þon̄ for þonne *then, when*.

In later times ȝ occurs for g, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards = y: hence the O. z still retained in some S. names, as Dalzell, Menzies, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, wiid, good, gees, for wíd, gód, gés, like D. wijd &c.; in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects; as, (sleahan) sleán, G. schlagen, D. slaan; gangan, gán, G. gehen, D. gaan; hangan, hón, G. and D. hangen. N has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before s, (Note 1.) while it remains in kindred tongues; as, ést (*love, favour*), Goth. ansts; gós, G. gans, L. ans-er; ós (*god, hero*) G. ans; sóft, G. sanft; fús (*prompt*), Goth. funs; ús, Goth. and G. uns, L. nos, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where ns is in like manner avoided; as, δους, δοῦσα (L. dans), στας, στᾶσα (L. stans), Σιμοεις, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the ν appears as soon as the σ is removed: neut. δον, σταν; gen. δοντος, σταντος, Σιμοεντος &c. In A. S. í, ý, ó, and ú before ð,

often answer to a cognate short vowel followed by *nd*, *nt*, or *nth*, in the other languages; as, *líðe*, (*lithe, soft*) G. *linde*; *síð* (*time*) Goth. *sinths*, Dan. *sinde*; *swíð*, Goth. *swinths*; *hrýðer*, G. *rind*, D. *rund*; *ýð*, L. *unda*; *óðer*, Goth. *anthars*, G. *ander*; *teóðe* (*tenth*), G. *zehnte*; *cúð*, G. *kund*; *gúð* (*war*), Goth. *gunths*, O. G. *kund*.

In the imperfects *stóð*, *bróhte*, *þúhte*, *þóhte*, *n* is likewise dropt, and the vowel made long, *g* or *c* in the three last becoming *h*, as often else; *cunnan* and *unnan* also make *cúðe*, *úðe* instead of *cunde* (G. *konnte*), *unde*: *bohte* *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L.; as, *fundo*, *fūdi*, *fūsus*; *tundo*, *tūsus*, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

---

Page 4.—Sometimes too *g* is added before *e*, as *geów* for *eów*, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41); with a soft vowel before or after it, *g* seems to have been but lightly sounded, as *y*, or as a fine guttural.

---

Page 5.—Other changes are *io* for *eo*, and *ió* for *eó*; *se ofon*, *sio fon*, *heó*, *hió* · *u* for *o*, and *ú* for *ó*, especially after *g'e*, which sometimes becomes *i*; *geong*, (*giung*) *iung*; *geó*, (*giú*) *iú*, *ió*; *Ió'tas*, *Iú'tas* *Jutes*: *ie* for *y*; *gyld*, *gield* *payment, tax* &c. *U* occurs mediævally for *v* in foreign names, as *Dauid* *David*; hence also for *f*, as *luuian* for *lufian* *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

---

Page 8.—A. S. *d* has sometimes become E. *th* (soft), often G. *t*; *fæder* *father*; G. *vater*. *þ* and *ð* usually answer to G. and D. *d*; *þreo*, G. *drei*, D. *drie*; *bróðer*, G. *bruder*, D. *broeder*; *ð* sometimes to G. and D. *t*; *forð*, G. *fort*, D. *voort*. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination *th* for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as þ is found oftenest at the beginning, and ð at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German :

Neut. clif	G. klippe (f.)	<i>cliff, rock.</i>
— líc	G. leiche (f.)	<i>corpse.</i>
— sáð	G. saat (f.)	<i>seed.</i>
— sceorp	G. schärpe (f.)	<i>scarf.</i>
— big-spel	G. bei-spiel (m.)	<i>example.</i>
— toll	G. zoll (m.)	<i>toll.</i>
Masc. næs	G. nose (f.)	<i>nose, ness.</i>
— sál	G. seil (n.)	<i>cord.</i>
— tear	G. zähre (f.)	<i>tear.</i>
— an-(ge-)weald	G. ge-walt (f.)	<i>power.</i>
Fem. blæd	G. blatt (n.)	<i>fruit, leaf.</i>
— nyt	G. nutz (m.)	<i>use.</i>

L. has *clivus* masc. and *clivum* neut. ; *nasus* is masc.

Page 9.—Swefen *dream* is fem. II. 3., and neut. III. 1.

Sceó *shoe* (G. schuh masc.) is masc. II. 2. (plur. sceós), or fem. I. 3. (plur. sceón O. *shoon*), or III. 3. (plur. (ge-)scý.)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as -e, -u, -el, -en, -er, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more : setl *seat*, and wered *host* are masc. ; -oð and -uð are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem. ; as, geógoð(-uð) *youth*, from geong : -ð after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, strengð from strang ; otherwise sometimes neut. as, morð *murder*, or masc. as monð (monað) *month*.

Compounds in -lác are neut., in -ráden feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders ; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more



case-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer to the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in *-σι*, and the L. in *-bus*, the latter to the Gr. which form it in *-οις* or *-αις*, and the L. in *-is*. The terms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater *seeming* propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only *-u*, and in the latter they have oftener the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon; thus, simple: *ὄβς*, *aur-is*, *eá r-e*; *ὀ-νομ-α*, *nom-en*, *n a m-a*; *hom-o*, *gum-a*; complex: *ἔργ-ον*, *w e o r e*; *πυργ-ος*, *burh*; *via*, *w e g*; *vir*, *w e r*. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning; as, *heofon*, *heofone* *heaven*, *mann*, *manna* *man*, *þeów*, *þeówa* *slave*; some with; as, *múð* *month* (*animate*), *múða* *mouth* (*inanimate*), see List III. above; *lufa* and *lufe* are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for *love*, *affection* (*amor*), the latter for *love*, *sake* (*gratia*): *Godes lufu* *love of God*; for *sumes gódes lufan* *for the sake of some good*.

---

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. it is derived from it; the ablative next as in some words derived from the accus.; and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, as being in neuters and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c.: in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, *twá*, *bá*, and *þreo* are noticeable exceptions.

---

Page 13.—The plural ending *-an* (G. *-en*) became in time *-en* which in *ox-en* (*ox-an*) is yet rightly used; *hos-en* (*hós-a*), and P. *hous-en* (*hús*), and *furz-en* (*fyr-s-as*) are wrong. To *brethr-en* (*bróðr-u*),

and *childr-en* (cildr-u) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *child-er* still in P. use: see p. 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. küch-en) whence *chick* is shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *vix-en*; see p. 66.

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined; as Gota *Goth*, Beda, Anna: Europa follows the L. making accus. Europam; dat. and gen. Europe (the medieval form of Europæ): Donua *Danube* (G. Donau; well called by Milton *Donaw*), and sometimes Sicilia and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a; all nouns in -a being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in -u, (II. 3. or III. 3.); as, Mæð-hild, Eád-gifu, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgiva*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative; as, He ge-seáh Simonem *he saw Simon*. Fram Decapoli *from Decapolis*. Iacobus Zebedei *James (son) of Zebedee*. Lazarus gá út! *Lazarus come forth!* Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II. 2., as, Salomon, Salomones, Salomone; Petrus, Petre, and the like.

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as herz-ens, nam-ens, will-ens, lieb-ens(-würdig), are derived from the Goth. gen., hairt-ins, nam-ins (L. nom-inis) wilj-ins &c. A. S. heort-an, nam-an, will-an, luf-an. Glaub-ens is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in -en, glauben, (complex) Goth. ga-láubeins, A. S. (simple) ge-leáfa. Herz-e (Goth. hairto, A. S. heorte) is still in P. and poetical use: other G. simple nouns, as heri (A. S. hearra) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as auf erden (*on earth*), vor freuden (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in -n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed.

---

Page 15.—Nouns in -e (II. 2.) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, end-eas, end-eum &c.

Fréond and feónd being originally participials, derived, the former from fréogan (G. freien) *to court, honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to fáh *hostile* (whence *foe*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II. 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that æ is changed to a; otherwise not; as, wæstm, pl. wæstmas (*fruit*) æcer, pl. æceras, æcras: thus too in adjectives; smæl, þæt smale, smalor, but fæst, þæt fæste, fæstor and the like.

Feld and ford originally belonged to III. 2; feld-u, ford-u like sun-u

---

Page 17.—Hand belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in -u hand-u.

---

Page 20.—Wædla *poor* hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (I. 2.) *a beggar*; wædlian *to beg*: þearfa *poor* is commonly if not always used as a noun—*a poor man*: wana *wanting* seems indeclinable.

---

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings -or, -ost (-oste), and -er, -est (-este) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former oftener follow a, o, and u, the latter e, i, or y. see addit. note on p. 42

---

Page 25.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in -e and -lice (p. 70.) as lang-e, lang-lice, strang-e, strang-lice, hræd-lice, heág-e, heá-lice, eáð-e, eáðe-lice, sceort-lice, sóft-e, yfel-e, lytl-e.

---

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *wors-er* for *worse* is. *Lest* is (þý-)læs(-þe), t being added as in *against-t* &c. The ending -mest has no connexion with mæst *most*, though it also has become -*most*: our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative.

---

Page 27.—*Ye* is therefore the true nom., *you* the accus. &c. "If any man say ought to *you*, *ye* shall say."

---

Page 29.—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

Page 30.—*Pissere* and *þissera* are older forms than *þisse* and *þissa*.

---

Page 32.—The *á-* in *á-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73); *á* is *ever*, *aye*, *ἀει*, Goth. *áiw-*, G. *je*, whence *αἰων*, Goth. *áiws*, L. *ævum*, *age*, *eternity*. *A'-* or *æg-* (p. 65) gives a *general* sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand* *some one*; *á-hwær* *some-, any-, every-where*, *á-hwænn* *some time, any time*, P. *some-when, any-when*: with the negative it becomes *ná* *never, no*; *ná-hwider* *no-whither*: *ná-wiht* is more regular than *nán-wiht*. *A'wðer* and *áðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *á-hwæðer*, and = *ægðer*, *æg-hwæðer*: *náwðer* is *ná-hwæðer* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nother* *neither* has arisen from *either*.

---

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *án*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *sum* is commoner for the article than *án*.

---

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called *Simple* from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or *Weak* as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed *Complex* from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or *Strong*, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *ceall-ian*, *καλ-ειν*, *cal-are* *to call*; *tem-ian*, *δαμ-αιν*, *dom-are* *to tame*; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere* *to shine*: complex; *graf-an*, *γραφ-ειν*; *to (en-)grave, write*; *brec-an*, *ρηγ-ειν*, *frang-ere, to break*; *ter-an*, *τερ-ειν*, *ter-ere* *to tear* &c.; *flów-an*, *flu-ere* *to flow*; *drag-an*, *trah-ere* *to draw, drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usually called *regular*, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs have in course of time become simple, and this change is still going on. Thus *bake*, *sleep*, *leap*, *sweep*, *weep*, *fare*, *wield*, *fold*, *step*, *starve*, *creep*, *reek*, *lye*

*wreak, dive, shove, row, flow, swallow, brook* &c. from A. S. complex forms have become simple: others are in a fair way to do so, retaining only a complex imperf. or part. past, some of which are either gone or going out of use; as, *hung, hove, stood, shove, clomb, glode, bet, shod; waxen, hewn, laden, graven, shapen, washen, strewn, holpen, bursten, foughten, swollen* &c.

G. *walten (to rule), wallen (to boil), sähen (to sow), krähen (to crow), kauen (to chew), wachen (to watch), wathen (to wade), reuen (to rue), lachen (to laugh)*, as also most of the E. synonyms, have become simple; others, as *backen (to bake), hauen (to hew), sieden (to seethe)* &c. are in the transition state. A few E. verbs from A. S. I. 2., and I. 3. have assumed imperfects (but not participles past) of a *seeming* complex form; as, *meet, met; lead, led; send, sent; build, built*; from *métan, lédan, sendan, byldan*. A very few A. S. verbs have both forms without change of meaning; as, *bringan; bringe, bróhte, bróht, or bringe, brang, brungen*; the latter however is rare.

---

Page 38.—Attention should be paid to the quantity of the complex or strong imperfects, both as compared with that of the present, and as to whether it is long throughout, or short throughout, or short in the first and third persons singular, and long in the 2nd, and the whole plural, or long in the first and third pers., and short in the rest. Thus II. 2. from presents some short, some long, and II. 3. from presents all short, make it long throughout, except some doubtful in the former; as, *healde; heóld, heólde* &c. *drage; dróh* &c. III. 1. has the present short, and the imperf. short throughout with a change of vowel; *binde; band, bunde, band, bundon*. II. 1. short in the pres. has the imperf. short and long; *brece; bræc, bráce, bræc, brácon*; except the few in *ea*; as, *geaf, geafe* &c., together with *com, come* &c., and *nam, name* &c. which are short throughout. III. 2. and III. 3. with long pres. have the imperf. long and short with a change of vowel; *drife; dráf, drife, dráf, drifon; clúfe; cleáf, clufe, cleáf, clufon*. Complex participles past are all short but some of II. 2.

---

Page 41.—Verbs in *-igan* (for *-ian*) are often conjugated regularly

like I. 2. ; as, *fyligan to follow*, imper. *fyligde*, imper. *fylig*, but part. past *fyligd* : see p. 42.

---

Page 42.—There seem to have been originally two distinct classes of verbs in -ian, both now included in I. 1., the one forming its imperf. and part. past in -óde, -ód, the other in -ede, -ed ; the former answering closely to the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. in -āvi, -ātus, ēvi, ēt-us, and -īvi, īt-us, the latter to the L. in -ui, ūt-us &c. In time -óde, ód were shortened, and then came to be confounded with -ede, -ed, many verbs being found with both forms ; -ode, -od however seems to occur oftenest when the root-vowel is a, o, or u, -ede, ed when it is e, i, or y ; see addit. note on p. 25 : -ade, -ad is a modification of -ode, -od. The -de, -ed (-d) of I. 2. 3. is contracted from -ede, -ed, I. 1. ; when the d is thus brought next a hard consonant it becomes t.

The characteristic c is not changed if l, n, or s stand before it ; as, *elce (delay) imperf. elcte* ; *drence (drench) drence* ; *wisce (wish) wiscte* ; unless the n be dropt, as in *þince, þúhte*, and the like : it else commonly (in simple verbs) becomes h, as in *táce*, p. 42, &c.

---

Page 43.—The original form of the 2nd and 3rd persons sing. of I. 2, 3, II. and III. was *hýrest, hýreð, tellest, telleð, brecest, breceð, healdest, healdeð, dragest, drageð, bindest, bindeð, drífest, drífeð, clúfest, clúfeð* and the like, which often occur, especially in poetry : the shortened and modified forms *hýrst, hýrð, telst, briest* &c. given in the grammar are more modern, and commonest in prose.

---

Page 44.—All verbs seem at first to have formed their 1st pers. pres. in -o or -u ; comp. -*o* and L. -*o* : *haf·o = L. hab·eo*.

---

Page 50.—Most of the verbs in II. 2., and some in II. 3. are derived from the Goth. reduplicative verbs, which repeat the long syllable ; the A. S. has kept only what may be called the literal augment, and that in but a few verbs ; as, *héhht, leólc, reórd*, from *hátan, lácan (to play, deceive)*, *rádan* (G. *reden to discourse*), where the Goth.

has hái-háit, lái-láik, rái-ród from háitan &c. Some only alter the vowel, as sceaþe, sceóp, where the Goth. has sái-skáp.

---

Page 54.—Verbs in -án form their part. pres. in -ánde; sleán, sleánde.

---

Page 58.—W r í ð a n is an exception to the general rule that complex verbs change ð into d in the 2nd pers. sing., and in the plural of the imperf., and in the past part.: see cweðan p. 50, weorðan p. 57, and seóðan p. 60, which are all regular.

---

Page 62.—Complex participles past sometimes agree like adjectives with a noun, sometimes do not; as, Ða þing þe him ge-sende wáron *the things that were sent him*. Seó óðre naman wæs Tate háten *who by another name was hight Tate*.

The part. past in the pluperfect is sometimes governed in the accus. by the auxiliary hæbban, as, Ðá híg hæfdon hyra lofsang ge-sungenne *when they had sung their song of praise*.

---

Page 63.—Un- sometimes, as in G., is not merely negative, but implies badness; un-þeáw *bad habit*, un-weder (G. un-ge-witter) *storm, bad weather*.

The prefix to- must be carefully distinguished from the preposition tó in composition; as, to-gán *to go asunder, separate*, tó-gán *to go to*; G. zer-gehen, zu-gehen: to- implies *division, dispersion of parts*, and hence often *destruction*.

---

Page 64.—For- gives in general a negative or bad sense, or is intensive, much like κατα-; déman *to judge*, for-déman *to condemn*, κρινειν, κατα-κρινειν, G. ur-theilen, ver-urtheilen; bernan *to burn*, for-bernan *to burn up, consume*, καιειν, κατα-καιειν, G. brennen, ver-brennen; dón *to do, make*, for-dón *to un-do, ruin, destroy*; scyppan *to form*, for-scyppan *to trans-form, de-form*; for-fela *very many*. This prefix must not be confounded with the prepositions for and fore; (probably of the same origin, = L. pro); thus for-seón is *to over-look, de-spise*, G. ver-sehen; for-seón, fore-seón *to fore-see*, G. vor-sehen; for-gán *to for-go, do without*,

*perish*, G. *ver-gehen*, L. *per-ire*; *fore-gán* to *fore-go*, *go before*, G. *vor-gehen*, L. *præ-ire*. It is as wrong to write *fore-go* for *for-go*, as *fore-give* for *for-give*.

And- answers closely to *ἀντι-*, denoting opposition, reciprocity &c.; and-saca *denier*; and-wyrðan, and-swarian, *ἀντ-επειν* to *answer*; and-wlitan, *ἀντι βλέπειν*, to *gaze at*, *look in the face*.

The prefix *ge-* is in A. S. used oftener and more indiscriminately than in any kindred language old or new. Though originally conveying no notion of past time, it seems gradually to have acquired it, and to have become a kind of syllabic augment to imperfects, but especially to participles past, as in Dutch and German. In the formation of English it was by degrees dropt before all but participles past, where it first became *i-* or *y-*, and has since been lost altogether, surviving only as *a-* in some P. words. In G. and D. it is still in use before nouns, adjectives &c., but in general with a distinct effect on their meaning, referible to its original collective force. A. S. *ge-* sometimes denotes *the result of doing a thing*; as, *Ge-slóh þín fæder fáh ða máste* *thy father by striking avenged the greatest of feuds*. *His feorh ge-faran oð ðe ge-irnan* *to save his life by going or running (to a sanctuary)*.

---

Page 65.—The prefix *or-* (left out in the right place) denotes want of a thing; as, *or-mæte im-mense*, *measure-less*, *or-trúwian* to *de-spair*, *or-sorh care-less*, *se-secure*: it must not be confounded with *or-* in *or-eald very old*, (G. *ur-alt*), from *or*, *ord beginning*, *point*, connected with L. *or-ior*, *or-igo* &c.

The ending *-el*, *-ol*, answers sometimes to L. *-ul-um*; *gyrd-el*, L. *cing-ulum*, *girdle*.

The primary meaning of *-ing* is *young*, and hence it forms patronymics, and terms of contempt &c.: *-ling* has been supposed to be derived from *-ing*.

---

Page 66.—Other feminines in *-en* are *menn-en* from *man*, G. *mann*, *männin*; *gyd-en* from *god*, G. *gott*, *gött-in*, D. *god*, *god-in*: in *-e*; *fyl-e*, *filly*, from *fol-a foal*; *wal-e* from *wealh* or *wal-a*, *Celt*, *stranger*; *webb-e* (or *webb-estre web-ster*), from *webb-a weaver*.



The ending *-estre* (like D. *-ster*) is feminine only, and the notion of thus forming nouns of contempt &c., as *pun-ster*, *trick-ster*, *road-ster* is modern.

The ending *dóm* is properly a noun (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, authority, dignity*: *hád* is also a noun (II. 2.) *state, condition, rank, Holy Orders*.

Page 67.—*-scipe* (not occurring alone) is related to *scapan*, (*sceapan*), *to shape, form, create*, and denotes *form, mode, condition*; *land-scape*, or *land-skip*, (*land-scipe*) G. *land-schaft*, D. *land-schap*, should in rule be *land-ship*, unless borrowed, like a few other words, directly from the Dutch.

The adjective ending *-ig* answers to *ικ-ος*, L. *-ic-us*.

Page 68.—A. S. *-isc* had often a bad sense, which E., G., and D. *-ish, -isch, -sch* almost always have, except when added to local names; the three former often contrast with *-lic, -like* or *-ly*, G. *-lich*, which convey a good or indifferent notion; as, *folc-isc vulgar* (Chaucer has *pepl-ish*), *folc-lic popular*; *cild-isc child-ish*, G. *kind-isch*, *cild-lic child-like*, G. *kind-lich*; compare also *mann-ish, man-like, man-ly*, G. *männ-isch, männ-lich*; *woman-ish, woman-ly*, G. *weib-isch, weib-lich*; *girl-ish, maiden-ly* &c.

While *-ol (-ul)* answers in form to L. *-ul-us*, in sense it is more like *-ax*, commonly denoting a wrong propensity; as, *sprec-ol, cwid-ol*, L. *loqu-ax, dic-ax talkative, evil-tongued*; *et-ol*, L. *ed-ax greedy*. Sometimes as in *sóð-sag-ol truth-telling, deóp-þanc-ol deep-thinking*, it expresses a good quality.

*-en* (G. *-ern, -en*) usually denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *stán-en of stone*, G. *stein-ern*; *treów-en treen, wood-en*; *gyld-en gold-en*, G. *gold-en*; *lin-en lin-en, of lin or flax*, G. *lein-en*; from *stán, treów, gold, lin*. Several words thus formed are now obsolete; *ston-en, brick-en* &c. are still in P. use.

*-cund* answers to L. *-cund-us*.

Some adjectives are formed in *-ed* or *-d* like simple participles past; as, *ge-hyrned horn-ed*, (G. *ge-hörn-t*); *ge-sceód shod* (G. *ge-schuh-t*); the rest of the verb, if any, is here wanting.

Page 69.—*-c-*, *-n-*, *-s-*, in these and the like verbs represent lost syllables; therefore *swin-s-ian* (*to make melody*) is no exception to the rule against *ns* in the same syllable; see p. 2. n. 1.

The verbal endings *-ian* and *-an* (*-ειν*, G. and D. *-an*) became in time *-en* and *-e*, the latter of which has in many cases been dropt, in all has lost its sound. Such verbs as *whit-en*, *black-en* are of modern use, *to white* and the like being the older form.

---

Page 71.—Other adverbs in common use are: *á aye*, *always*, *æfre* (G. and D. *immer*) *ever*, *næfre* (G. and D. *nimmer*) *never*, *ædre* *straightway*, *recene* *instantly*, *eft-sona* *eft-soon*, *forth-with*, *endemes at length*, *þær-rihte* (*forð-rihte*) *forthwith*, *elles* *else*, *other-wise*, *elles-hwider* *else-whither*, *ellor* *elsewhere*, *þus* (D. *dus*) *thus*, *georne* (G. *gerne*) *earnestly*, *willingly*, *þearle* *very*, *exceedingly*, *geara* *well*, *accurately*, (*lyt-*)*hwon a little* (S. *a wheen*), *hugu* (*hwegu*), *hwæt-(hwylc)-hugu &c.* *somewhat*, *a little*, *þances gratis*, *á gnes þances of one's own accord*, *his &c. willan*, *unwillan with, against his &c. will*, *semninga suddenly*, *hrædinga quickly*, *áninga (áninga) alone, only*, *on bæc-ling backward*. *Sona* is construed with a genitive; as, *Sona þæs soon after that*. *Sona þæs wintres early in the winter*.

---

Page 72.—It seems likely that the first part of the word *Oxena-ford* is not from *oxa ox*, but from the Celtic root meaning *water, river*, (A. S. *wos* is *ooze, liquid*) which appears in *Ouse* (many) *Isis*, *Ex*, *Ax*, *Usk*, *Esk*, *Oise*, *Aisne*, *Yssel*, *Oxus*, and so many other names of rivers; and this is confirmed by *Ousn-ey* in the neighbourhood. *Ford of oxen* is however the strict meaning of the A. S. name, and doubtless the one then attached to it; *Βορ-πορος*, *Schwein-furt*, *Swin-ford* and the like supply fair analogies.

*Ofer-* sometimes conveys the same idea as *for-*; *ofer-gitan* (= *for-gitan*) *to forget*. *ofer-hycgan* = *for-hycgan* *to despise*.

*Of-* beside its intensive force (p. 105. n. 2.) sometimes has a bad one; as, *me þincð me thinks*, *me of-þincð it repenteth me*, *I take it ill*.

Page 73.—Our prefix *a-* has in general sprung from the A. S. *on-* (*an-*, *a-*), and *on* is still sometimes used for it; as, *a-float*, A. S. *on-flote*; *a-live*, A. S. *on-life* (G. *am leben*); *a-two* (*in-two*), A. S. *on-twá*; *a-feared*, A. S. *a-fered*; O. *on flote*, *on life*, *on two*, also *on sleep*, *on row* &c. now *a-sleep* &c.; we yet say *on board*, or *a-board*, *on fire*, or *a-fire* and the like: see also p. 69—71, 73.

In some words *a-* is from A. S. *of-*; as, *of-dúne* (*a-dúne*, *a-dún*) *a-down*, *down* (= G. *berg-ab*); *of-þyrst* *a-thirst*; we say too *of kin* or *a-kin*; it is therefore not unlikely that in other cases A. S. *a-* may, as the sense would imply, have sprung from *of-*; thus *a-faran to depart*, *a-wendan to turn away*, *a-weorpan to cast off*, answer to G. *ab-fahren*, and G. and D. *ab-wenden*, *af-wenden*, *ab-werfen*, *af-werpen*: so *ἀπο*, *ἀπ'* became L. *ab*, and that in time *a*. Once or twice E. *a-* is from A. S. *ge-*; as *ge-líc* (O. *y-like*), *a-like*; *ge-mang* (O. *e-mong*), *a-mong*.

Page 77.—Adjectives also take an *abl.* or *dat.* of the cause &c., which commonly stands first; as, *Iú-dædum fáh stained with (my) former deeds*. *Wundum wérig weary with wounds*.

Likewise of the person &c. by whom the action implied is done; as, *His freóndum or-wéne despaired of by his friends*. *Wurðfull þám cyningum to be honoured by kings*. *Un-a-segendlíc ánigum unspeakable by any*.

Adjectives in general govern the object to which they have relation in the *dative*; as, *Ic eom ge-trýwe mínon hláf-orde I am true to my lord*. *He wæs me yrre he was angry with me*. *Dryhten wæs þám folce gram (the) Lord was wroth with the people*.

Adjectives denoting nearness also govern the *dative*; as, *A'n biscop þe him þá hendest wæs a bishop that was then nearest (handiest) to him*.

Some adverbs take the same case as the adjectives whence they are formed: *Nánig him ge-líce þæt dón meahthe none could do that like him*.

Page 79.—The following verbs also govern the *dative* of the far ob-

ject: *seġan to say, tell, bodian to preach, announce, beódan to offer, and-wyrdan, and-swarian to answer, gifan to give, for-gifan to give away, forgive, syllan to give, sell* (of which examples need not be given), *wið-metan to compare, measure with, ge-an-lícian to liken, make like; yrsian to be angry with, æt-filhan to approach, apply to, wísian (wissian) to guide, direct, fore-wesan (L. præ-esse) to govern, be over, be-sárgian to pity, be sorry for, have a dative of the near object; losian to be lost, escape from, one of the person affected; as, Hire fær is wið-meten fyrd-lícum truman her going is compared to an army on the march. Iceom yslum and axum ge-an-lícod I am made like cinders and ashes. Se-þe yrsað his bréðer he that is angry with his brother. Nó ic him þæs georne æt-fealh I did not therefore willingly approach him. Þæt híg mihton þám folce wel wissian that they might guide the people well. Mid-þý heó þá feala geara þissum mynstre fore-wæs when she then many years had ruled this convent. Þá be-sárgode he þære sorh-fullan méder then pitied he the sorrowful mother. Him losaðe án sceáp he had lost one sheep.*

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative; as, *Démað rihtne dóm judge right judgment.*

---

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflexive way with the pronoun in the accusative: *ge-biddan to pray, warnian to be ware, belgan to be angry, ge-wraðian to be wroth; as, Þonne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest. Warniað eów fram mannum be ware of men. Warniað wið þa bóceras be ware of the scribes. Þá bealh he hine then was he angry. Ge belgað wið me ye are angry with me. Þá ge-wraðede hine se arce-biscop Landfranc then was the archbishop Lanfranc wroth.*

Likewise some compounds of *seón*; as, *Hine &c. for-seón (G. sich ver-sehen) to err, commit an oversight, sin. Gif he hine under-bæc be-sáwe if he should look back.*

Page 81—3.—Wealdan, on-fón, éhtan, bídan, and earnian sometimes govern the accusative.

---

Page 83.—On-þracian *to dread, feel horror at* governs the genitive like on-drædan; as, An þraciende þæs un-ge-limpes *feeling horror at the misfortune.*

---

Page 87.—Be and tó sometimes govern the ablative; as, Be þý mæg ælc mon wítan *by that may each man know.* Tó-þý-þæt (= tó-þón-þæt) *in order that.* Tó-hwý *why?*

As æt is sometimes *to*, so is tó sometimes *at*; the two are now and then confounded in E., and G. zu stands for both. Tó and æt (the latter in composition often) sometimes mean *from*, the former especially with wilnian and sécan; as, Ealle tó þe ætes wilniað *all from thee desire food.* Manna ge-hwylc se-þe séceð tó him *every man that seeketh from him.* He þæt ful ge-þeah æt Wealh-þeón *he took the cup from (at the hand of) Wealh-theó.*

Tó meaning *motion to*, has sometimes, though seldom, an accusative: He fór tó Samariam þæt land *he went to the land of Samaria.*

---

Page 88.—Tó-emnes (a rare word) rather *by, along-side, over-against* than *along*, is from efen (efn, emn) *even, equal*; on-efn (-emn) is the same; Him on-efn ligeð ealdor-ge-winna *by him lieth (his) deadly foe.* Emn-, em- are common in composition; emn-lang (G. eben (so) lang) *of the same length*; em-leóf (G. eben (so) lieb) *equally dear*; em-þeów *fellow-slave.*

---

Page 90.—Innon, úton, and úppon should not be divided, -on (-an) being here only an ending and not the preposition on, serving in the two last to change the adverb into a preposition.

---

Page 93.—Þenden *while* sometimes has a subjunctive; as, Þenden hit hát sý *while it be hot.*

Page 95.—For-standan (or fore-standan) *to defend, stand before*, likewise for-standan (G. ver-stehen) *to understand* govern the accusative; as, Hine God for-stód him God defended.

---

Page 96.—Other conjunctions are swá-same-swá *the same as—, in like manner as—*, ná-læs þæt án ac— *not (that) only but—*, nates-hwón *by no means*, nóht-þón-læs *never-(nought)-theless*, gea *yea*, ná *nay*, gese *yes*, nese *no*, næs (nas) *not*, huru *moreover, chiefly*, huru-þinga *at least*, þæs-þe *since, after that, because*, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) *hwy*, þæs(-for) *for that, therefore*, gen, gena *yet*.

Comp. οὐκ ἔχομεν εἰ μὴ—we have (not) but—, one only of the many instances of likeness between the Gr. and A. S. syntax.

Weorðe too may be either expressed or understood; as, Wá (weorðe) þám men! *wo worth the man!*

---

Page 97.—Lo! has no more to do with *look* than O. gif has with gifan: our vulgar *law!* and *lawk!* may also be derived from lá!

---

Page 98.—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say; this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfríc was a common name; among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch.

---

Page 133.—Teóhhian (from teóh, p. 152. n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boëthius, where its meaning is not very clear.

---

Page 140.—Tó- in tó-geanes sometimes does not rime (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations: to- on the other hand never rimes.

## CORRECTIONS.

---

- Page 29, for usser, usse, ussum, usses, ussa read ússer, ússe &c.
- „ 51, l. 3, for hó read hange, hó.
- „ 52, for geong read geóng.
- „ 66, l. 12, for þeow, þeowen read þeów, þeówen, and accent þeów, and its derivatives elsewhere.
- „ 71, l. 3, for niwan read níwan, and accent níwe elsewhere.
- „ do. l. 19, for fíc-treow read fíc-treów.
- „ 78, l. 8, for Oðer-healf read O'ðer-healf.
- „ 79, l. 3, 4, for axian read áxian, and accent the verb elsewhere.
- „ 83, l. 11, for ehtan read éhtian or éhtan, and accent elsewhere.
- „ 90, for úpp-on, inn-on, út-on read úppon &c.
- „ 100, for aðena, aðenede, aðenian read a-þena, a-þenede, a-þenian.
- „ 101, for lociað, locian read lóciað, lócian, and accent elsewhere.
- „ 102, for un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian read un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian.
- „ 103, l. 1, for ge-drefede read ge-dréfede.
- „ 105, l. 14, for sacerdra read sacerda.
- „ 109, last but one, for sóð-líce read sóð-líce.
- „ 115, note 14, for herd read heed.
- „ 118, note 2, for (II. 1.) read (II. 2.)
- „ 126, note 9, for for líðan read for-líðan.
- „ 133, l. 8, for moton read móton.
- „ do. for teohhiað, teohhian read teóhhiað, teóhhian.
- „ 134, note 1, for Ut-a-springan read U't-a-springan.
- „ 138, l. 5, for boded read bade.
- „ 143, for cyððe, cyððu read cýððe, cýððu.
- „ 168, l. 20, for birne read byrne (birne).
- „ 172, l. 4, for she read the, who.
- „ 180, l. 23, for G. ans read Goth. ans.
- „ 183, l. 14, for keaven read heaven.
- „ 188, l. 1, for imper. fyligde read imperf. fyligde.



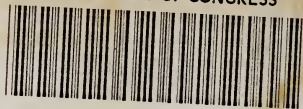








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 239 475 9

